

USBIO

USB Software Development Kit for Windows

Reference Manual

Version 2.31

November 23, 2005

Thesycon® Systemsoftware & Consulting GmbH
Werner-von-Siemens-Str. 2 · D-98693 Ilmenau · GERMANY

Tel: +49 3677 / 8462-0

Fax: +49 3677 / 8462-18

e-mail: USBIO @ thesycon.de

<http://www.thesycon.de>

Copyright (c) 1998-2005 by Thesycon Systemsoftware & Consulting GmbH
All Rights Reserved

Disclaimer

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. No part of this manual may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use, without prior written permission from Thesycon Systemsoftware & Consulting GmbH. The software described in this document is furnished under the software license agreement distributed with the product. The software may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of the license.

Trademarks

The following trade names are referenced throughout this manual:

Microsoft, Windows, Win32, Windows NT, Windows XP, and Visual C++ are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Other brand and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

Contents

Table of Contents	16
1 Introduction	17
2 Overview	19
2.1 Platforms	19
2.2 Features	20
2.3 Restrictions	21
2.4 USB 2.0 Support	22
2.4.1 How to install USB 2.0 Host Controller Drivers	23
2.5 Select an Appropriate Programming Interface	24
2.5.1 Standard C Interface	24
2.5.2 C++ Interface	25
2.5.3 Native Delphi Interface	25
2.5.4 Native Java interface	25
2.5.5 USBIOCOM for Visual Basic, Delphi or C#	25
3 Architecture	27
3.1 USBIO Object Model	28
3.1.1 USBIO Device Objects	28
3.1.2 USBIO Pipe Objects	30
3.2 Establishing a Connection to the Device	31
3.3 Power Management	32
3.4 Device State Change Notifications	33
4 Cypress FX Support	35
4.1 Configuration	35
4.1.1 FxFwFile	35
4.1.2 FxBootLoaderCheck	35
4.1.3 FxExtRamBase	35
4.2 Copy the Firmware File	36
4.3 Operation of Firmware Download	36
4.3.1 With two Product ID's	36
4.3.2 With one Product ID	36

5	Programming Interface	37
5.1	Programming Interface Overview	38
5.1.1	Query Information Requests	38
5.1.2	Device-related Requests	38
5.1.3	Pipe-related Requests	40
5.1.4	Data Transfer Requests	40
5.2	Control Requests	41
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR	42
	IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR	43
	IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE	44
	IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE	45
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS	46
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION	47
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE	48
	IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR	49
	IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION	50
	IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE	52
	IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE	53
	IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST	54
	IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST	55
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS	57
	IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS	58
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO	59
	IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE	60
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER	62
	IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE	63
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE	64
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO	65
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO	66
	IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO	67
	IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT	69
	IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE	71
	IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE	72
	IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE	73
	IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE	74

IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE	75
IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE	76
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS	77
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS	78
IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS	79
IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS	81
IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN	83
IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT	84
5.3 Data Transfer Requests	86
5.3.1 Bulk and Interrupt Transfers	86
Bulk or Interrupt Write Transfers	86
Bulk or Interrupt Read Transfers	86
5.3.2 Isochronous Transfers	87
Isochronous Write Transfers	88
Isochronous Read Transfers	88
5.4 Error Handling	90
5.4.1 Control Transfers	90
5.4.2 Bulk and Interrupt Transfers	90
5.4.3 Isochronous Transfers	91
5.4.4 Test the Error Handling	91
5.5 Data Structures	92
USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO	93
USBIO_DEVICE_INFO	94
USBIO_DRIVER_INFO	95
USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST	97
USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST	99
USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST	100
USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA	101
USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA	102
USBIO_GET_INTERFACE	103
USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA	104
USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING	105
USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION	106
USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST	107
USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS	109

USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO	111
USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO	113
USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO	115
USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER	116
USBIO_DEVICE_POWER	117
USBIO_BIND_PIPE	118
USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS	119
USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS	120
USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS	121
USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS	123
USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER	125
USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER	126
USBIO_ISO_PACKET	128
USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER	129
5.6 Enumeration Types	130
USBIO_PIPE_TYPE	130
USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT	131
USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE	132
USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE	133
5.7 Error Codes	134
USBIO_ERR_SUCCESS (0x00000000L)	134
USBIO_ERR_CRC (0xE0000001L)	134
USBIO_ERR_BTSTUFF (0xE0000002L)	134
USBIO_ERR_DATA_TOGGLE_MISMATCH (0xE0000003L)	134
USBIO_ERR_STALL_PID (0xE0000004L)	134
USBIO_ERR_DEV_NOT_RESPONDING (0xE0000005L)	134
USBIO_ERR_PID_CHECK_FAILURE (0xE0000006L)	134
USBIO_ERR_UNEXPECTED_PID (0xE0000007L)	134
USBIO_ERR_DATA_OVERRUN (0xE0000008L)	134
USBIO_ERR_DATA_UNDERRUN (0xE0000009L)	134
USBIO_ERR_RESERVED1 (0xE000000AL)	135
USBIO_ERR_RESERVED2 (0xE000000BL)	135
USBIO_ERR_BUFFER_OVERRUN (0xE000000CL)	135
USBIO_ERR_BUFFER_UNDERRUN (0xE000000DL)	135
USBIO_ERR_NOT_ACCESSED (0xE000000FL)	135

USBIO_ERR_FIFO (0xE0000010L)	135
USBIO_ERR_XACT_ERROR (0xE0000011L)	135
USBIO_ERR_BABBLE_DETECTED (0xE0000012L)	135
USBIO_ERR_DATA_BUFFER_ERROR (0xE0000013L)	135
USBIO_ERR_ENDPOINT_HALTED (0xE0000030L)	136
USBIO_ERR_NO_MEMORY (0xE0000100L)	136
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_URB_FUNCTION (0xE0000200L)	136
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAMETER (0xE0000300L)	136
USBIO_ERR_ERROR_BUSY (0xE0000400L)	136
USBIO_ERR_REQUEST_FAILED (0xE0000500L)	136
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PIPE_HANDLE (0xE0000600L)	136
USBIO_ERR_NO_BANDWIDTH (0xE0000700L)	136
USBIO_ERR_INTERNAL_HC_ERROR (0xE0000800L)	136
USBIO_ERR_ERROR_SHORT_TRANSFER (0xE0000900L)	137
USBIO_ERR_BAD_START_FRAME (0xE0000A00L)	137
USBIO_ERR_ISOCH_REQUEST_FAILED (0xE0000B00L)	137
USBIO_ERR_FRAME_CONTROL_OWNED (0xE0000C00L)	137
USBIO_ERR_FRAME_CONTROL_NOT_OWNED (0xE0000D00L)	137
USBIO_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (0xE0000E00L)	137
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR (0xE0000F00L)	137
USBIO_ERR_INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES (0xE8001000L)	137
USBIO_ERR_SET_CONFIG_FAILED (0xE0002000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_USBD_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL (0xE0003000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_USBD_INTERFACE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0004000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PIPE_FLAGS (0xE0005000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_USBD_TIMEOUT (0xE0006000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_GONE (0xE0007000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_STATUS_NOT_MAPPED (0xE0008000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_CANCELED (0xE0010000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_ISO_NOT_ACCESSED_BY_HW (0xE0020000L)	138
USBIO_ERR_ISO_TD_ERROR (0xE0030000L)	139
USBIO_ERR_ISO_NA_LATE_USBPORT (0xE0040000L)	139
USBIO_ERR_ISO_NOT_ACCESSED_LATE (0xE0050000L)	139
USBIO_ERR_FAILED (0xE0001000L)	139

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_INBUFFER (0xE0001001L)	139
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_OUTBUFFER (0xE0001002L)	139
USBIO_ERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY (0xE0001003L)	139
USBIO_ERR_PENDING_REQUESTS (0xE0001004L)	139
USBIO_ERR_ALREADY_CONFIGURED (0xE0001005L)	140
USBIO_ERR_NOT_CONFIGURED (0xE0001006L)	140
USBIO_ERR_OPEN_PIPES (0xE0001007L)	140
USBIO_ERR_ALREADY_BOUND (0xE0001008L)	140
USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND (0xE0001009L)	140
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_PRESENT (0xE000100AL)	140
USBIO_ERR_CONTROL_NOT_SUPPORTED (0xE000100BL)	140
USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT (0xE000100CL)	140
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_RECIPIENT (0xE000100DL)	141
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_TYPE (0xE000100EL)	141
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_IOCTL (0xE000100FL)	141
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_DIRECTION (0xE0001010L)	141
USBIO_ERR_TOO_MUCH_ISO_PACKETS (0xE0001011L)	141
USBIO_ERR_POOL_EMPTY (0xE0001012L)	141
USBIO_ERR_PIPE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0001013L)	141
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_ISO_PACKET (0xE0001014L)	141
USBIO_ERR_OUT_OF_ADDRESS_SPACE (0xE0001015L)	142
USBIO_ERR_INTERFACE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0001016L)	142
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_DEVICE_STATE (0xE0001017L)	142
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAM (0xE0001018L)	142
USBIO_ERR_DEMO_EXPIRED (0xE0001019L)	142
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_POWER_STATE (0xE000101AL)	142
USBIO_ERR_POWER_DOWN (0xE000101BL)	142
USBIO_ERR_VERSION_MISMATCH (0xE000101CL)	143
USBIO_ERR_SET_CONFIGURATION_FAILED (0xE000101DL)	143
USBIO_ERR_ADDITIONAL_EVENT_SIGNALLED (0xE000101EL)	143
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PROCESS (0xE000101FL)	143
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_ACQUIRED (0xE0001020L)	143
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_OPENED (0xE0001020L)	143
USBIO_ERR_VID_RESTRICTION (0xE0001080L)	143
USBIO_ERR_ISO_RESTRICTION (0xE0001081L)	143

USBIO_ERR_BULK_RESTRICTION (0xE0001082L)	144
USBIO_ERR_EP0_RESTRICTION (0xE0001083L)	144
USBIO_ERR_PIPE_RESTRICTION (0xE0001084L)	144
USBIO_ERR_PIPE_SIZE_RESTRICTION (0xE0001085L)	144
USBIO_ERR_CONTROL_RESTRICTION (0xE0001086L)	144
USBIO_ERR_INTERRUPT_RESTRICTION (0xE0001087L)	144
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0001100L)	144
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_OPEN (0xE0001102L)	145
USBIO_ERR_NO_SUCH_DEVICE_INSTANCE (0xE0001104L)	145
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_FUNCTION_PARAM (0xE0001105L)	145
USBIO_ERR_LOAD_SETUP_API_FAILED (0xE0001106L)	145
USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_ALREADY_OPENED (0xE0001107L)	145
6 USBIO Class Library	147
6.1 Overview	147
6.1.1 CUsbIo Class	147
6.1.2 CUsbIoPipe Class	147
6.1.3 CUsbIoThread Class	148
6.1.4 CUsbIoReader Class	148
6.1.5 CUsbIoWriter Class	149
6.1.6 CUsbIoBuf Class	149
6.1.7 CUsbIoBufPool Class	149
6.2 Class Library Reference	150
CUsbIo class	150
Member Functions	150
CUsbIo	150
~CUsbIo	150
CreateDeviceList	151
DestroyDeviceList	152
Open	153
Close	155
GetDeviceInstanceDetails	156
GetDevicePathName	158
IsOpen	159
IsCheckedBuild	160

IsDemoVersion	161
IsLightVersion	162
IsOperatingAtHighSpeed	163
GetDriverInfo	164
AcquireDevice	165
ReleaseDevice	166
GetDeviceInfo	167
GetBandwidthInfo	168
GetDescriptor	169
GetDeviceDescriptor	171
GetConfigurationDescriptor	172
GetStringDescriptor	174
SetDescriptor	176
SetFeature	178
ClearFeature	179
GetStatus	180
ClassOrVendorInRequest	181
ClassOrVendorOutRequest	182
SetConfiguration	183
UnconfigureDevice	184
GetConfiguration	185
GetConfigurationInfo	186
SetInterface	187
GetInterface	188
StoreConfigurationDescriptor	189
GetDeviceParameters	190
SetDeviceParameters	191
ResetDevice	192
CyclePort	193
GetCurrentFrameNumber	194
GetDevicePowerState	195
SetDevicePowerState	196
CancelIo	197
IoctlSync	198
ErrorText	199

Data Members	200
CUsbIoPipe class	201
Member Functions	201
CUsbIoPipe	201
~CUsbIoPipe	201
Bind	202
Unbind	204
Read	205
Write	206
WaitForCompletion	207
ReadSync	209
WriteSync	211
ResetPipe	213
AbortPipe	214
GetPipeParameters	215
SetPipeParameters	216
PipeControlTransferIn	217
PipeControlTransferOut	219
SetupPipeStatistics	221
QueryPipeStatistics	222
ResetPipeStatistics	224
CUsbIoThread class	225
Member Functions	225
CUsbIoThread	225
~CUsbIoThread	225
AllocateBuffers	226
FreeBuffers	227
StartThread	228
ShutdownThread	229
ProcessData	230
ProcessBuffer	231
BufErrorHandler	232
OnThreadExit	233
ThreadRoutine	234
TerminateThread	235

Data Members	236
CUsbIoReader class	237
Member Functions	237
CUsbIoReader	237
~CUsbIoReader	237
ThreadRoutine	238
TerminateThread	239
CUsbIoWriter class	240
Member Functions	240
CUsbIoWriter	240
~CUsbIoWriter	240
ThreadRoutine	241
TerminateThread	242
CUsbIoBuf class	243
Member Functions	243
CUsbIoBuf	243
CUsbIoBuf	244
CUsbIoBuf	245
~CUsbIoBuf	246
Buffer	247
Size	248
Data Members	249
CUsbIoBufPool class	251
Member Functions	251
CUsbIoBufPool	252
~CUsbIoBufPool	252
Allocate	253
Free	254
Get	255
Put	256
CurrentCount	257
Data Members	258
CSetupApiDll class	259
Member Functions	259
CSetupApiDll	259

~CSetupApiDll	259
Load	260
Release	261
7 USBIO Demo Application	263
7.1 Dialog Pages for Device Operations	263
7.1.1 Device	263
7.1.2 Descriptors	263
7.1.3 Configuration	263
7.1.4 Interface	264
7.1.5 Pipes	264
7.1.6 Class or Vendor Request	264
7.1.7 Feature	264
7.1.8 Other	265
7.2 Dialog Pages for Pipe Operations	265
7.2.1 Pipe	265
7.2.2 Buffers	265
7.2.3 Control	266
7.2.4 Read from Pipe to Output Window	266
7.2.5 Read from Pipe to File	266
7.2.6 Write from File to Pipe	266
8 Driver Customization	267
8.1 Customization Overview	267
8.2 Customization Steps	268
8.3 Customizing usbio.inf	269
8.3.1 Configuration of Names	269
8.3.2 Configuration of Hardware ID	270
8.3.3 Configuration of Software Interface Identifiers	271
8.3.4 Configuration of Device Setup Class	271
8.3.5 Customizing Default Driver Settings	273
8.4 Customizing Version Resources	275
9 Driver Installation and Uninstallation	277
9.1 The USBIO Installation Wizard	277
9.2 Installing USBIO Manually	278

9.3	The USBIO Cleanup Wizard	279
9.4	Uninstalling USBIO manually	279
9.5	Creating a Driver Setup Package	280
9.6	Installing the Driver Package at the Customer PC	281
9.6.1	Without Pre-Installation	281
9.6.2	With Pre-Installation	281
10	Debug Support	283
10.1	Enable Debug Traces	283
11	Related Documents	285
	Index	287

1 Introduction

USBIO is a generic Universal Serial Bus (USB) device driver for Windows. It is able to control any type of USB device and provides a convenient programming interface that can be used by Win32 applications. The USBIO device driver supports USB 1.1 and USB 2.0.

This document describes the architecture, the features and the programming interface of the USBIO device driver. Furthermore, it includes instructions for installing and using the device driver.

Note that for the USBIO driver there is a high-level programming interface available which is based on Microsoft's COM technology. The USBIO COM Interface is included in the USBIO Development Kit. For more information refer to the USBIO COM Interface Reference Manual.

The reader of this document is assumed to be familiar with the specification of the Universal Serial Bus Version 1.1 and 2.0 and with common aspects of Win32-based application programming.

2 Overview

Support for the Universal Serial Bus (USB) is built into the current Windows operating systems. These systems include device drivers for the USB Host Controller hardware, for USB Hubs, and for some classes of USB devices. The USB device drivers provided by Microsoft support devices that conform with the appropriate USB device class definitions made by the USB Implementers Forum. USB devices that do not conform to one of the USB device class specifications, e.g. in the case of a new device class or a device under development, are not supported by device drivers included with the operating system.

In order to use devices that are not supported by the operating system itself the vendor of such a device is required to develop a USB device driver. This driver has to conform to the Win32 Driver Model (WDM) that defines a common driver architecture for Windows 98, Windows Millennium, Windows 2000, and Windows XP. Writing, debugging, and testing of such a driver means considerable effort and requires a lot of knowledge about development of kernel mode drivers.

By using the generic USB device driver USBIO it is possible to get any USB device up and running without spending the time and the effort of developing a device driver. Especially, this might be useful during development or test of a new device. But in many cases it is also suitable to include the USBIO device driver in the final product. So there is no need to develop and test a custom device driver for the USB-based product.

2.1 Platforms

The USBIO driver supports the following operating system platforms:

- Windows 98 Second Edition (SE), the second release of Windows 98 (USB 1.1 only)
- Windows Millennium (ME), the successor to Windows 98 (USB 1.1 only)
- Windows 2000 with Service Pack 4
- Windows XP with Service Pack 2
- Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 1
- Windows XP x64 Edition
- Windows Server 2003 x64 Edition
- Windows XP Embedded Service Pack 2

Note that Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 95 are not supported by USBIO.

2.2 Features

The USBIO driver provides the following features:

- Supports USB 1.1 and USB 2.0
- Complies with the Win32 Driver Model (WDM)
- Supports Plug&Play
- Supports Power Management
- Provides an interface to USB devices that can be used by any Win32 application
- Provides an interface to USB endpoints (pipes) that is similar to files
- Fully supports asynchronous (overlapped) data transfer operations
- Supports the USB transfer types Control, Interrupt, Bulk, and Isochronous
- Multiple USB devices can be controlled by USBIO at the same time
- Multiple applications can use USBIO at the same time

The USBIO device driver can be used to control any USB device from a Win32 application running in user mode. Examples of such devices are

- telephone and fax devices
- telephone network switches
- audio and video devices (e.g. cameras)
- measuring devices (e.g. oscilloscopes, logic analyzers)
- sensors (e.g. temperature, pressure)
- data converters (e.g. A/D converters, D/A converters)
- bus converters or adapters (e.g. RS 232, IEEE 488)
- chip card devices

2.3 Restrictions

Some restrictions that apply to the USBIO device driver are listed below.

- If a particular kernel mode interface (e.g. WDM Kernel Mode Streaming or NDIS) has to be supported in order to integrate the device into the operating system, it is not possible to use the generic USBIO driver. However, in such a situation it is possible to develop a custom device driver based on the source code of the USBIO though. Please contact Thesycon if you need support on such kind of project.
- Although the USBIO device driver fully supports isochronous endpoints, there are some limitations with respect to isochronous data transfers. They result from the fact that the processing of the isochronous data streams has to be performed by the application which runs in user mode. There is no guaranteed response time for threads running in user mode. This may be critical for the implementation of some synchronization methods, for example when the data rate is controlled by loop-back packets (see the USB Specification, Chapter 5 for synchronization issues of isochronous data streams).

However, it is possible to support all kinds of isochronous data streams using the USBIO driver. But the delays that might be caused by the thread scheduler of the operating system should be taken into consideration.

- There are some problems caused by the implementation of the operating system's USB driver stack. Thesycon encountered these problems during debugging and testing of the USBIO driver. For some of the problems there are work-arounds built into the USBIO driver. Others do still exist because there is no way to implement a work-around.

Problems that are known to Thesycon are documented in *Problems.txt* which is included in the USBIO Development Kit. We strongly recommend to refer to this file when strange behavior is observed during application development.

- There are a lot of serious problems with the USB driver stack on Windows XP. Refer to *Problems.txt* to find a description of the problems that are known so far.

2.4 USB 2.0 Support

The USBIO device driver supports USB 2.0 and the Enhanced Host Controller on Windows 2000 and Windows XP. However, USBIO has to be used on top of the driver stack that is provided by Microsoft. Thesycon does not guarantee that the USBIO driver works in conjunction with a USB driver stack that is provided by a third party. For instance, third-party drivers are available for USB 2.0 host controllers from NEC, INTEL or VIA. Because the Enhanced Host Controller hardware interface is standardized (EHCI specification) the USB 2.0 drivers provided by Microsoft can be used with host controllers from any vendor. However, the user has to ensure that these drivers are installed. In some cases this requires manual installation of the host controller driver. This will be discussed in more detail in the next sections.

Note that USBIO does not support USB 2.0 on Windows 98 and Windows ME. Microsoft does not provide USB 2.0 host controller drivers for these systems. Any third-party host controller drivers that may be available for Windows 98 and Windows ME are not supported by USBIO.

The USBIO driver is tested with Microsoft's driver stack on Windows 2000 and Windows XP on various host controllers. Table 1 summarizes the versions of the driver stack components that have been used for testing. We do not recommend the usage of Windows XP SP1. There are a lot of bugs in this driver stack. See problems.txt for details.

Table 1: Supported USB driver stack components

	Windows 2000 Service Pack 4	Windows XP Service Pack 2
usbehci.sys	5.00.2195.6709	5.1.2600.2180 (xpsp_sp2_rtm.040803-2158)
usbport.sys	5.00.2195.6681	5.1.2600.2180 (xpsp_sp2_rtm.040803-2158)
usbhub20.sys	5.00.2195.6655	—
usbhub.sys	5.00.2195.6689	5.1.2600.2180 (xpsp_sp2_rtm.040803-2158)
usbd.sys	5.00.2195.6658	5.1.2600.0 (XPClient.010817-1148)

The drivers for the USB 2.0 host controller are not included in the original releases of Windows 2000 and Windows XP. They can be obtained by means of the Windows Update service or by installing a service pack. The following sections describe the driver installation procedure for each system in detail.

2.4.1 How to install USB 2.0 Host Controller Drivers

The device drivers for the Enhanced Host Controller are available at the Windows Update server and are included in the Service Pack 2 for Windows XP and the Service Pack 4 for Windows 2000. To install the drivers, follow the steps described below.

- Install Service Pack on the computer. Alternatively, you can launch the Windows Update service available in the Start menu.
- Open the Device Manager by choosing Manage from the context menu of the My Computer icon. In Device Manager locate the item that represents the USB 2.0 Enhanced Host Controller. If there is no driver currently installed for the host controller the item is in the group Other Devices and is labeled with a yellow exclamation mark. If there is already a driver installed for the host controller, a third-party driver for instance, then the item is located in the group Universal Serial Bus controllers.
- Open the property page of the Enhanced Host Controller item and select the Driver page. Choose Driver Details to display detailed information on the drivers that are currently in use. If the driver version is not correct, select Update Driver. This will launch the Upgrade Device Driver Wizard.
- Follow the instructions shown by the Hardware Update Wizard. Normally, the wizard will install the correct drivers automatically. If the wizard prompts you to select the new driver from a list, make sure you select the driver provided by Microsoft.
- If there was a driver already installed for the host controller the Hardware Update Wizard possibly selects the existing driver again and does not upgrade to a new driver. In this case you should manually select the driver to be installed. To do so, select 'Install from a list or specific location' on the first dialog shown by the wizard. On the next dialog select 'Don't search'. In the next step, the wizard allows you to select the new driver from a list. Make sure you select the driver provided by Microsoft.
- Open the property page again and verify that the correct drivers are installed now.

2.5 Select an Appropriate Programming Interface

The USBIO Development Kit supports the following programming interfaces:

- Standard C interface
- C++ interface
- Native Delphi interface
- Native Java interface
- Visual Basic Interface using USBIOCOM
- Delphi Interface using USBIOCOM

The following table summarize the features of the interfaces:

Table 2: Features of the USBIO programming interfaces

Interface	Requires	High band width	Source Code of library
Standard C	Driver only	yes	-
C++	USBIOLIB	yes	yes
Delphi	Delphi Units	yes	yes
Java	USBIOJAVA & Classes	yes	yes
Visual Basic COM	USBIOCOM	no	no
Delphi COM	USBIOCOM	no	no
C# COM	USBIOCOM	no	no

The following sections give a overview to the different interfaces and enables the user to select the best interface for the application to build.

2.5.1 Standard C Interface

The C interface is directly exported by the USBIO.SYS kernel mode driver and does not need additional libraries. This interface uses the standard Win32 API functions CreateFile(), DeviceIoControl(), ReadFile(), and WriteFile(). The programmer can select whether the file handles are opened in synchronous or overlapped mode. The function call DeviceIoControl requires in most cases an additional data structure which must be prepared to pass the data to the driver. This requires a little bit more code.

This interface allows a full low level access to the driver. It does not contain support for buffer pools or threads to archive high performance data transmission. Additional effort is required to add this features to a project. This interface should be selected if the programming language C is required. The documentation of this interface is part of this document.

2.5.2 C++ Interface

The C++ interface is implemented in the USBIOLIB library. The source code of the library is part of the distribution. The library is a static library which must be linked to the project. A different way to use the library is to include the source files into a project.

The C++ interface covers all functions of the driver interface. The classes simplifies the calls to the driver. Unused parameters which are required by the function DeviceIoControl must not be passed to the class methods.

The library implements a buffer pool and threads for high performance data exchange with the device. The programming effort using this interface is smaller in comparison with the Standard C interface. The interface causes a very small overhead and can be used for devices which requires a high band width. The documentation of this interface is part of this document.

2.5.3 Native Delphi Interface

The native Delphi interface contains Delphi prototypes for all driver functions and a thin class layer. The source code of the Delphi units are part of the package. The units must be included in a Delphi project. The methods of the units allow a low level access to the driver with a small overhead. A buffer pool is included in the implementation but the units does not contain threads.

The interface does not have a separate documentation. The documentation exists as comments in the source code and in a demo application.

This interface enables high performance applications.

2.5.4 Native Java interface

The native Java interface is implemented in the USBIOJAVA.DLL and the Java classes. The source code of both modules is part of this package. The HTML documentation of the Java interface can be opened with the start menu.

A simple and a complex Java application demonstrate the interface. The source code of both applications is part of this package.

The Java classes contain buffer pools and threads. The interface allow high performance data exchange with devices.

2.5.5 USBIOCOM for Visual Basic, Delphi or C#

The USBIOCOM interface is implemented in the USBIOCOM.DLL. The source code of the DLL is not part of the standard package but can be licensed separately. The COM interface covers all functions of the USBIO driver. It contains threads and buffer pools, which can be controlled by interface function calls.

The documentation of this interface is part of this package and can be found in the start menu.

The package includes simple and enhanced examples for Visual Basic, Delphi and C#. For Visual Basic the data types match good to the COM data types. In Delphi a little effort is required to handle the COM data types (e.g. SAFE_ARRAY).

Unfortunately the COM architecture creates a lot of internal threads and copies the data. This causes a higher CPU load in comparison to the native interfaces. It is possible to reach the full data rate with full speed devices. For high speed devices with a high bandwidth requirement this interface should not be used.

C# uses the garbage collection to destroy no longer used objects. The garbage collection can interrupt the data transfer for a time period. It is not recommended to use C# if a real time responsibility of the PC is required.

3 Architecture

Figure 1 shows the USB driver stack that is part of the Windows operating system. All drivers are embedded within the WDM layered architecture.

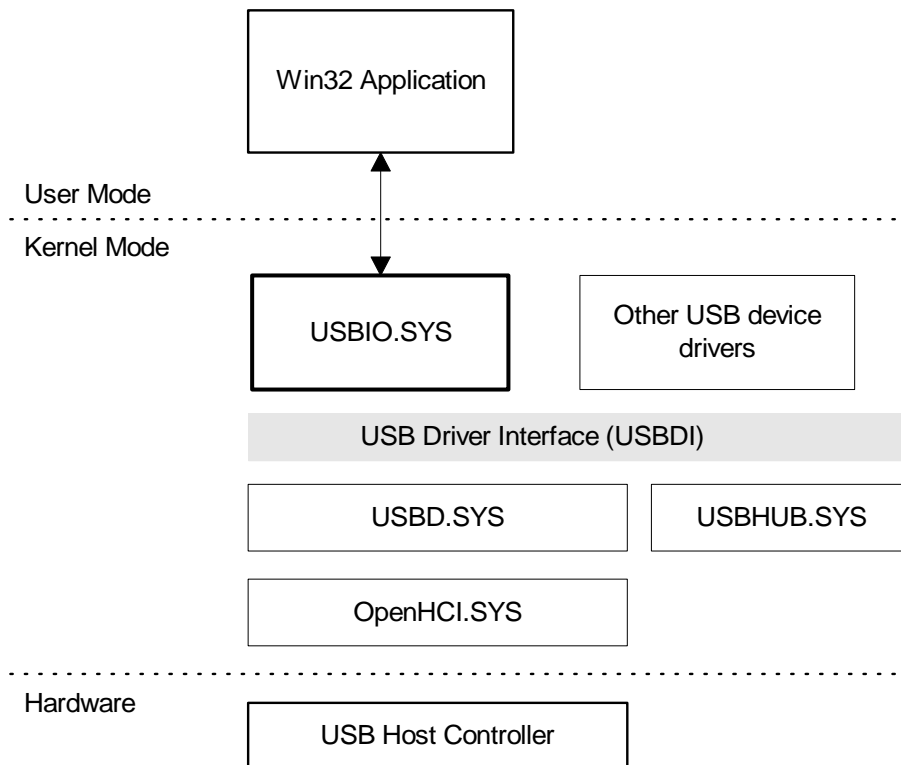


Figure 1: USB Driver Stack

The following modules are shown in Figure 1:

- **USB Host Controller** is the hardware component that controls the Universal Serial Bus. It also contains the USB Root Hub. There are two implementations of the host controller that support USB 1.1: Open Host Controller (OHC) and Universal Host Controller (UHC). There is one implementation of the host controller that supports USB 2.0: Enhanced Host Controller (EHC).
- **OpenHCI.SYS** is the host controller driver for controllers that conform with the Open Host Controller Interface specification. Optionally, it can be replaced by a driver for a controller that is compliant with UHCI (Universal Host Controller Interface) or EHCI (Enhanced Host Controller Interface). Which driver is used depends on the mainboard chip set of the computer. For instance, Intel chipsets contain Enhanced Host Controllers and Universal Host Controllers.
- **USBD.SYS** is the USB Bus Driver that controls and manages all devices connected to the USB. It is provided by Microsoft as part of the operating system.
- **USBHUB.SYS** is the USB Hub Driver. It is responsible for managing and controlling USB Hubs.

- USBIO.SYS is the generic USB device driver USBIO.

The software interface that is provided by the operating system for use by USB device drivers is called USB Driver Interface (USBDI). It is exported by the USBD at the top of the driver stack. USBDI is an IRP-based interface. This means that each individual request is packaged into an I/O request packet (IRP), a data structure that is defined by WDM. The I/O request packets are passed to the next driver in the stack for processing and returned to the caller after completion.

The USB Driver Interface is accessible for kernel mode-drivers only. Normally, there is no way to use this interface directly from applications that run in user mode. The USBIO device driver was designed to overcome this limitation. It connects to the USBDI at its lower edge and provides a private interface at its upper edge that can be used by Win32 applications. Thus, the USB driver stack becomes accessible to applications. A Win32 application is able to communicate with one or more USB devices by using the programming interface exported by the USBIO device driver. Furthermore, the USBIO programming interface may be used by more than one application or by multiple instances of one application at the same time.

The main design goal for the USBIO device driver was to make available to applications all the features that the USB driver stack provides at the USBDI level. For that reason the programming interface of the USBIO device driver (USBIOI) is closely related to the USBDI. But for many of the functions there is no one-to-one relationship.

3.1 USBIO Object Model

The USBIO device driver provides a communication model that consists of device objects and pipe objects. The objects are created, destroyed, and managed by the USBIO driver. An application can open handles to device objects and bind these handles to pipe objects.

3.1.1 USBIO Device Objects

Each USBIO device object is associated with a physical USB device that is connected to the USB. The device may support USB 1.1, USB 2.0 or both. A device object is created by the USBIO driver if a USB is detected by the Plug&Play Manager of the operating system. This happens when a USB device is connected to the system. The USBIO driver is able to handle multiple device objects at the same time.

Each device object created by USBIO is registered with the operating system by using a unique identifier (GUID, Globally Unique Identifier). This identifier is called "Device Interface ID". All device objects managed by USBIO are identified by the same GUID. The GUID is defined in the USBIO Setup Information (INF) file. Based on the GUID and an instance number, the operating system generates a unique name for each device object. This name should be considered as opaque by applications. It should never be used directly or stored permanently.

It is possible to enumerate all the device objects associated with a particular GUID by using functions provided by the Windows Setup API. The Functions used for this purpose are:

```
SetupDiGetClassDevs( )  
SetupDiEnumDeviceInterfaces( )  
SetupDiGetDeviceInterfaceDetail( )
```

The result of the enumeration process is a list of device objects currently created by USBIO. Each of the USBIO device objects corresponds to a device currently connected to the USB. For each device object an opaque device name string is returned. This string can be passed to **CreateFile()** to open the device object.

A default Device Interface ID (GUID) is built into the USBIO driver. This default ID is defined in USBIO_I.H. Each device object created by USBIO is registered by using this default ID. The default Device Interface ID is used by the USBIO demo application for device enumeration. This way, it is always possible to access devices connected to the USBIO from the demo application.

In addition, a user-defined Device Interface ID is supported by USBIO. This user-defined GUID is specified in the USBIO INF file by the **USBIO_UserInterfaceGuid** variable. If the user-defined interface ID is present at device initialization time USBIO registers the device with this ID. Thus, two interfaces – a default interface and a user-defined interface – are registered for each device. The default Device Interface ID should only be used by the USBIO demo application. Custom applications should always use a private user-defined Device Interface ID. This way, device naming conflicts are avoided.

Important:

Every USBIO customer should generate its own private device interface GUID. This is done by using the tool GUIDGEN.EXE from the Microsoft Platform SDK or the VC++ package. This private GUID is specified as user-defined interface in **USBIO_UserInterfaceGuid** in the USBIO INF file. The private GUID is also used by the customer's application for device enumeration. For that reason the generated GUID must also be included in the application. The macro **DEFINE_GUID()** can be used for that purpose. See the Microsoft Platform SDK documentation for further information.

As stated above, all devices connected to USBIO will be associated with the same device interface ID that is also used for device object enumeration. Because of that, the enumeration process will return a list of all USBIO device objects. In order to differentiate the devices an application should query the device descriptor or string descriptors. This way, each device instance can be unambiguously identified.

After the application has received one or more handles for the device, operations can be performed on the device by using a handle. If there is more than one handle to the same device, it makes no difference which handle is used to perform a certain operation. All handles that are associated with the same device behave the same way.

Note:

Former versions of USBIO (up to V1.16) used a different device naming scheme. The device name was generated by appending an instance number to a common prefix. So the device names were static. In order to ensure compatibility USBIO still supports the old naming scheme. This feature can be enabled by defining a device name prefix in the variable **USBIO_DeviceBaseName** in the USBIO INF file. However, it is strongly recommended to use the new naming scheme based on Device Interface IDs (GUIDs), because it conforms with current Windows 2000/XP guidelines. The old-style static names should only be used if backward-compatibility with former versions of USBIO is required.

3.1.2 USBIO Pipe Objects

The USBIO driver uses pipe objects to represent an active endpoint of the device. The pipe objects are created when the device configuration is set. The number and type of created pipe objects depend on the selected configuration. The USBIO driver does not control the default endpoint (endpoint zero) of a device. This endpoint is owned by the USB bus driver USBD. Because of that, there is no pipe object for endpoint zero and there are no pipe objects available until the device is configured.

In order to access a pipe the application has to create a handle by opening the device object as described above and attach it to a pipe. This operation is called "bind". After a binding is successfully established the application can use the handle to communicate with the endpoint that the pipe object represents. Each pipe may be bound only once, and a handle may be bound to one pipe only. So there is always an one-to-one relation of pipe handles and pipe objects. This means that the application has to create a separate handle for each pipe it wants to access.

The USBIO driver also supports an "unbind" operation. That is used to delete a binding between a handle and a pipe. After an unbind is performed the handle may be reused to bind another pipe object and the pipe object can be used to establish a binding with another handle.

The following example is intended to explain the relationships described above. In Figure 2 a configuration is shown where one device object and two associated pipe objects exist within the USBIO data base.

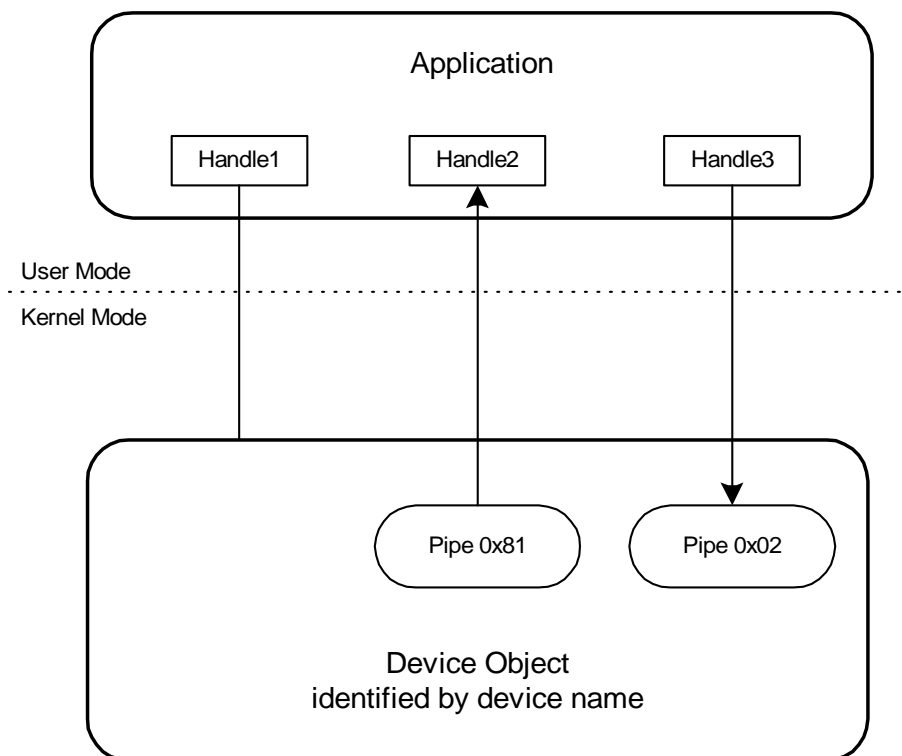


Figure 2: USBIO device and pipe objects example

The device object is identified by a device name as described in section 3.1.1 (page 28). A pipe object is identified by its endpoint address that also includes the direction flag at bit 7 (MSB). Pipe

0x81 is an IN pipe (transfer direction from device to host) and pipe 0x02 is an OUT pipe (transfer direction from host to device). The application has created three handles for the device by calling **CreateFile()**.

Handle1 is not bound to any pipe, therefore it can be used to perform device-related operations only. It is called a device handle.

Handle2 is bound to the IN pipe 0x81. By using this handle with the Win32 function **ReadFile()** the application can initiate data transfers from endpoint 0x81 to its buffers.

Handle3 is bound to the OUT pipe 0x02. By using Handle3 with the function **WriteFile()** the application can initiate data transfers from its buffers to endpoint 0x02 of the device.

Handle2 and Handle3 are called pipe handles. Note that while Handle1 cannot be used to communicate with a pipe, any operation on the device can be executed by using Handle2 or Handle3, too.

3.2 Establishing a Connection to the Device

The following code sample demonstrates the steps that are necessary at the USBIO API to establish a handle for a device and a pipe. The code is not complete, no error handling is included.

```
// include the interface header file of USBIO.SYS
#include "usbio_i.h"

// device instance number
#define DEVICE_NUMBER 0

// some local variables
HANDLE FileHandle;
USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION SetConfiguration;
USBIO_BIND_PIPE BindPipe;
HDEVINFO DevInfo;
GUID g_UsbioID = USBIO_IID;
SP_DEVICE_INTERFACE_DATA DevData;
SP_INTERFACE_DEVICE_DETAIL_DATA *DevDetail = NULL;
DWORD ReqLen;
DWORD BytesReturned;

// enumerate the devices
// get a handle to the device list
DevInfo = SetupDiGetClassDevs(&g_UsbioID,
    NULL, NULL, DIGCF_DEVICEINTERFACE | DIGCF_PRESENT);
// get the device with index DEVICE_NUMBER
SetupDiEnumDeviceInterfaces(DevInfo, NULL,
    &g_UsbioID, DEVICE_NUMBER, &DevData );
// get length of detailed information
SetupDiGetDeviceInterfaceDetail(DevInfo, &DevData, NULL,
    0, &ReqLen, NULL);
// allocate a buffer
DevDetail = (SP_INTERFACE_DEVICE_DETAIL_DATA*) malloc(ReqLen);
// now get the detailed device information
DevDetail->cbSize = sizeof(SP_INTERFACE_DEVICE_DETAIL_DATA);
SetupDiGetDeviceInterfaceDetail(DevInfo, &DevData, DevDetail,
    ReqLen, &ReqLen, NULL);
// open the device, use OVERLAPPED flag if necessary
// use DevDetail->DevicePath as device name
FileHandle = CreateFile(
    DevDetail->DevicePath,
    GENERIC_READ | GENERIC_WRITE,
    FILE_SHARE_WRITE | FILE_SHARE_READ,
    NULL,
```

```
        OPEN_EXISTING,
        0 /* or FILE_FLAG_OVERLAPPED */,
        NULL);
// setup the data structure for configuration
// use the configuration descriptor with index 0
SetConfiguration.ConfigurationIndex = 0;
// device has 1 interface
SetConfiguration.NbOfInterfaces = 1;
// first interface is 0
SetConfiguration.InterfaceList[0].InterfaceIndex = 0;
// alternate setting for first interface is 0
SetConfiguration.InterfaceList[0].AlternateSettingIndex = 0;
// maximum buffer size for read/write operation is 4069 bytes
SetConfiguration.InterfaceList[0].MaximumTransferSize = 4096;

// configure the device
DeviceIoControl(FileHandle,
                IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION,
                &SetConfiguration, sizeof(SetConfiguration),
                NULL, 0,
                &BytesReturned,
                NULL
                );

// setup the data structure to bind the file handle
BindPipe.EndpointAddress = 0x81; // the device has an endpoint 0x81
// bind the file handle
DeviceIoControl(FileHandle,
                IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE,
                &BindPipe, sizeof(BindPipe),
                NULL, 0,
                &BytesReturned,
                NULL
                );

// read (or write) data from (to) the device
// use OVERLAPPED structure if necessary
ReadFile(FileHandle, ...);

// close file handle
CloseHandle(FileHandle);
```

Refer to the Win32 API documentation for the syntax and the parameters of the functions **SetupDiXxx()**, **CreateFile()**, **DeviceIoControl()**, **ReadFile()**, **WriteFile()**, **CloseHandle()**. The file handle can be opened with the **FILE_FLAG_OVERLAPPED** flag if asynchronous behavior is required.

More code samples that show the use of the USBIO programming interface are included in the USBIO Development Kit.

3.3 Power Management

Current Windows operating systems support system-level power management. That means that if the computer is idle for a given time, some parts of the computer can go into a sleeping mode. A system power change can be initiated by the user or by the operating system itself, on a low battery condition for example. A USB device driver has to support the system power management. Each device which supports power switching has to have a device power policy owner. It is responsible for managing the device power states in response to system power state changes. The USBIO driver is the power policy owner of the USB devices that it controls. In addition to the system power changes the device power policy owner can initiate device power state changes.

Before the system goes into a sleep state the operating system asks every driver if its device can go into the sleep state. If all active drivers return success the system goes down. Otherwise, a message box appears on the screen and informs the user that the system is not able to go into the sleeping mode.

Before the system goes into a sleeping state the driver has to save all the information that it needs to reinitialize the device (device context) if the system is resumed. Furthermore, all pending requests have to be completed and further requests have to be queued. In the device power states D1 or D2 (USB Suspend) the device context stored in the USB device will not be lost. Therefore, a device sleeping state D1 or D2 is handled transparently for the application. In the state D3 (USB Off) the device context is lost. Because the information stored in the device is known to the application only (e.g. the current volume level of an audio device), the generic USBIO driver cannot restore the device context in a general way. This has to be done by the application. Note that Windows 2000/XP restores the USB configuration of the device (SET_CONFIGURATION request) after the system is resumed.

The behavior with respect to power management can be customized by INF file parameters. For example, if a long time measurement should be performed the computer has to be prevented from going power down. For a description of the supported INF file parameters, see also chapter 10 (page 283).

All registry entries describing device power states are DWORD parameters where the value 0 corresponds to **DevicePowerD0**, 1 to **DevicePowerD1**, and so on.

The parameter **PowerStateOnOpen** specifies the power state to which the device is set if the first file handle is opened. If the last file handle is closed the USB device is set to the power state specified in the entry **PowerStateOnClose**.

If at least one file handle is open for the device the key **MinPowerStateUsed** describes the minimal device power state that is required. If this value is set to 0 the computer will never go into a sleep state. If this key is set to 2 the device can go into a suspend state but not into D3 (Off). A power-down request caused by a low battery condition cannot be suppressed by using this parameter.

If no file handle is currently open for the device, the key **MinPowerStateUnused** defines the minimal power state the device can go into. Thus, its meaning is similar to that of the parameter **MinPowerStateUsed**.

If the parameter **AbortPipesOnPowerDown** is set to 1 all pending requests submitted by the application are returned before the device enters a sleeping state. This switch should be set to 1 if the parameter **MinPowerStateUsed** is different from D0. The pending I/O requests are returned with the error code **USBIO_ERR_POWER_DOWN**. This signals to the application that the error was caused by a power down event. The application may ignore this error and repeat the request. The re-submitted requests will be queued by the USBIO driver. They will be executed after the device is back in state D0.

3.4 Device State Change Notifications

The application is able to receive notifications when the state of a USB device changes. The Win32 API provides the function **RegisterDeviceNotification()** for this purpose. This way, an application will be notified if a USB device is plugged in or removed.

Please refer to the Microsoft Platform SDK documentation for detailed information on the functions **RegisterDeviceNotification()** and **UnregisterDeviceNotification()**. In addition, the source code of the USBIO demo application USBIOAPP provides an example.

The device notification mechanism is only available if the USBIO device naming scheme is based on Device Interface IDs (GUIDs). See section 3.1.1 (page 28) for details. We strongly recommend to use this new naming scheme.

Note:

The function **UnregisterDeviceNotification()** should not be used on Windows 98. There is a bug in the implementation that causes the system to become unstable. So it may crash at some later point in time. The bug seems to be "well known", it was discussed in some Usenet groups.

4 Cypress FX Support

The USBIO driver package supports the firmware download for Cypress IC's of the FX series. The driver can download the firmware from an Intel Hexadecimal file in ASCII format. The file must contain only "Data Records" and one "End of File Record". Other records are not supported. This is the usual format for 8 bit controllers.

4.1 Configuration

The firmware download feature can be enabled and configured by parameters in the INF file. The following parameters can be used.

4.1.1 FxFwFile

This parameter is a REG_SZ string with the file name of the firmware file. If this parameter is not set, the driver does not make a firmware download. If this parameter is set it should contain the complete file name of a Intel Hex firmware file without a path. The firmware file must be placed in the folder %SystemRoot%\system32\drivers.

If the firmware file cannot be opened or has invalid content the USBIO creates a log entry in the system log and does not start.

4.1.2 FxBootLoaderCheck

This parameter is a REG_DWORD and can have the values 0 or 1. If the parameter is set to 1, the driver reads 16 bytes from the internal memory. If the request is completed successfully it assumes the device is in boot loader mode and starts the firmware download.

If this request fails the driver assumes the vendor firmware is already running and the driver starts without firmware download.

If the value is set to 0 the driver performs always a firmware download.

If the parameter is not set, the driver assumes a value of 1.

4.1.3 FxExtRamBase

This parameter is a REG_DWORD and describes the first address of the external RAM. The download protocol has different requests to write data to the internal and to the external RAM. All records in the firmware file with a start address smaller than this parameter are written to the internal RAM. All other records are written to the external RAM.

We have seen, that on some integrated circuits the write requests to external RAM fail and the IC stops responding. Please check, if the used IC support the firmware download to external RAM.

The default value is 0x2000.

4.2 Copy the Firmware File

If the firmware download feature of the driver is used the firmware file becomes a part of the driver package. The firmware file must be copied together with the driver. The name of the firmware file must be entered in the section `[_CopyFiles_sys]` and `[SourceDisksFiles]`.

```
[_CopyFiles_sys]
;YourFirmwareFile.ihx

[SourceDisksFiles]
;YourFirmwareFile.ihx=1
```

Replace the name `YourFirmwareFile.ihx` with your firmware file and uncomment the lines. It is not possible to include a path in the firmware name.

4.3 Operation of Firmware Download

The firmware download is performed if the parameter `FxFwFile` is set. If any error occurs during the firmware download the driver does not start and is marked in the device manager as non operable. Possible errors are:

- File not found
- Invalid file content, including invalid records
- Data transfer error to the IC

After the download is complete the driver performs a Reset to start the downloaded firmware.

After a firmware download the interface of the driver is not enabled. This means that an application does not get a PnP event if USBIO works as a download driver and the driver cannot be opened by the application. The driver expects that the device disconnects after the firmware download and emulates a PnP cycle.

The firmware download can be set up in two ways:

4.3.1 With two Product ID's

In this case the boot loader and the firmware report different product ID's in the device descriptor. One configuration in the INF file sets the parameter `FxFwFile`. A drawback of this method is the installation. It must be performed for the boot loader and the real device.

4.3.2 With one Product ID

In this case the boot loader and the firmware report the same vendor and product ID. The driver configuration sets the parameter `FxBootLoaderCheck` to 1. The firmware responds with a stall to the request "Read internal RAM" Setup: `0xC0 0xA0` This has the advantage that only one installation is required.

5 Programming Interface

This section describes the programming interface of the USBIO device driver in detail. The programming interface is based on Win32 functions.

Note that there is a high-level programming interface available which is based on Microsoft's COM technology. The USBIO COM Interface is included in the USBIO software package. For more information refer to the USBIO COM Interface Reference Manual.

5.1 Programming Interface Overview

This section lists all operations supported by the USBIO programming interface sorted by category.

5.1.1 Query Information Requests

Operation	Issued On	Bus Action
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER	device	none

5.1.2 Device-related Requests

Operation	Issued On	Bus Action
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST	device	SETUP request on EP0
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE	device	none

IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR	device	none
IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE	device	reset on hub port, SET_ADDRESS request
IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT	device	reset on hub port, SET_ADDRESS request
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE	device	set properties on hub port
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE	device	none

5.1.3 Pipe-related Requests

Operation	Issued On	Bus Action
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE</code>	device	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS</code>	pipe	none
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN</code>	pipe	SETUP request on endpoint
<code>IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT</code>	pipe	SETUP request on endpoint

5.1.4 Data Transfer Requests

Operation	Issued On	Bus Action
ReadFile function	pipe	data transfer from IN endpoint to host
WriteFile function	pipe	data transfer from host to OUT endpoint

5.2 Control Requests

This section provides a detailed description of the I/O Control operations the USBIO driver supports through its programming interface. The I/O Control requests are submitted to the driver using the Win32 function **DeviceIoControl()** (see also chapter 3 on page 27). The **DeviceIoControl()** function is defined as follows:

```
BOOL DeviceIoControl(
    HANDLE hDevice,           // handle to device of interest
    DWORD dwIoControlCode,    // control code of operation to perform
    LPVOID lpInBuffer,        // pointer to buffer to supply input data
    DWORD nInBufferSize,     // size of input buffer
    LPVOID lpOutBuffer,       // pointer to buffer to receive output data
    DWORD nOutBufferSize,    // size of output buffer
    LPDWORD lpBytesReturned,  // pointer to variable to receive
                             // output byte count
    LPOVERLAPPED lpOverlapped // pointer to overlapped structure
                             // for asynchronous operation
);
```

Refer to the Microsoft Platform SDK documentation for more information.

The following sections describe the I/O Control codes that may be passed to the **DeviceIoControl()** function as **dwIoControlCode** and the parameters required for **lpInBuffer**, **nInBufferSize**, **lpOutBuffer**, **nOutBufferSize**.

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR operation requests a specific descriptor from the device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that will receive the descriptor data.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds.

Comments

The buffer that is passed to this function by means of **lpOutBuffer** should be large enough to hold the requested descriptor. Otherwise, only **nOutBufferSize** bytes from the beginning of the descriptor will be returned.

The size of the output buffer provided at **lpOutBuffer** should be a multiple of the FIFO size (maximum packet size) of endpoint zero.

If the request will be completed successfully then the variable pointed to by **lpBytesReturned** will be set to the number of descriptor data bytes returned in the output buffer.

See Also

USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST (page 97)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR (page 43)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR operation sets a specific descriptor of the device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided [USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST](#) data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that contains the descriptor data to be set.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This is equal to the number of descriptor data bytes to be transferred to the device.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes transferred if the request succeeds.

Comments

USB devices do not have to support a SET_DESCRIPTOR request. Consequently, most USB devices do not support the IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR operation.

Although the data buffer is described by the parameters **lpOutBuffer** and **nOutBufferSize** it provides input data for the request. Some confusion is caused by the naming scheme of the Windows API.

See Also

[USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST](#) (page 97)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR](#) (page 42)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE operation is used to set or enable a specific feature.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The SET_FEATURE request appears on the bus with the parameters specified in the **USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST** data structure pointed to by **lpInBuffer**.

See Also

USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST (page 99)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE (page 45)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE

The IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE operation is used to clear or disable a specific feature.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The CLEAR_FEATURE request appears on the bus with the parameters specified in the **USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST** data structure pointed to by **lpInBuffer**.

See Also

USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST (page 99)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE (page 44)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS operation requests status information for a specific recipient.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA).

Comments

The GET_STATUS request appears on the bus with the parameters specified in the **USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST** data structure. On successful completion the IOCTL operation returns the data structure **USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA** in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**.

See Also

USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST (page 100)

USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA (page 101)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION operation retrieves the current configuration of the device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided [USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA](#) data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA).

Comments

A GET_CONFIGURATION request appears on the bus. The data structure [USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA](#) pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** returns the configuration value. A value of zero means "not configured".

See Also

[USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA](#) (page 102)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE](#) (page 48)

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 50)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE operation retrieves the current alternate setting of a specific interface.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_GET_INTERFACE** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_GET_INTERFACE) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA).

Comments

A GET_INTERFACE request appears on the bus. The data structure **USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA** pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** returns the current alternate setting of the interface specified in the **USBIO_GET_INTERFACE** structure.

Note: This request is not supported by the USB driver stack on Windows XP. Consequently, on Windows XP this IOCTL operation will be completed with an error code of USBIO_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (0xE0000E00).

See Also

USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 103)
USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA (page 104)
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE (page 53)

IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR

The `IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR` operation stores a configuration descriptor to be used for subsequent set configuration requests within the USBIO device driver.

dwIoControlCode

Set to `IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR` for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that contains the descriptor data to be set.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This is equal to the number of descriptor data bytes to be stored.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to `NULL`.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided `DWORD` variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this `IOCTL` operation.

Comments

This `IOCTL` request may be used to store a user-defined configuration descriptor within the USBIO driver. The stored descriptor is used by the USBIO driver in subsequent [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION](#) operations. The usage of `IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR` is optional. If no user-defined configuration descriptor is stored USBIO will use the configuration descriptor provided by the device.

Note: This `IOCTL` operation is obsolete and should not be used. It was introduced in earlier versions of USBIO to work around problems caused by the Windows USB driver stack. The stack was not able to handle some types of isochronous endpoint descriptors correctly. In the meantime these problems are fixed and therefore the work-around is obsolete.

See Also

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 50)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION operation is used to set the device configuration.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

A SET_CONFIGURATION request appears on the bus. The USB bus driver USB D generates additional SET_INTERFACE requests on the bus if necessary. The parameters used for the SET_CONFIGURATION and SET_INTERFACE requests are taken from the configuration descriptor that is reported by the device.

One or more interfaces can be configured with one call. The number of interfaces and the alternate setting for each interface have to be specified in the **USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** structure pointed to by **lpInBuffer**.

All pipe handles associated with the device will be unbound and all pending requests will be cancelled. If this request returns with success, new pipe objects are available. The IOCTL operation **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO** may be used to query all available pipes and interfaces.

The parameter **MaximumTransferSize** has a size limitation on various operating systems and host controllers. See Microsofts Knowledge Base Article t'tMaximum size of USB transfers on various operating systemst't KB 832430 for details.

See Also

USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 106)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 59)

IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE (page 52)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION (page 47)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 48)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE (page 53)

IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE

The IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE operation is used to set the device to its unconfigured state.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

A SET_CONFIGURATION request with the configuration value 0 appears on the bus. All pipe handles associated with the device will be unbound and all pending requests will be cancelled.

See Also

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 50)
[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 47)
[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 59)
[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE](#) (page 48)
[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE](#) (page 53)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE operation sets the alternate setting of a specific interface.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

A SET_INTERFACE request appears on the bus.

All pipe handles associated with the interface will be unbound and all pending requests will be cancelled. If this request returns with success, new pipe objects are available. The operation **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO** may be used to query all available pipes and interfaces.

If invalid parameters (e.g. non-existing Alternate Setting) are specified in the **USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING** data structure an error status of USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAM will be returned. The previous configuration is lost in this case. The device has to be re-configured by using the IOCTL operation **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION**.

See Also

USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING (page 105)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 48)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION (page 47)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 59)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST

The **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST** operation is used to generate a class or vendor specific device request with a data transfer direction from device to host.

dwIoControlCode

Set to **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST** for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to `sizeof(USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST)` for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that will receive the data bytes transferred from the device during the data phase of the control transfer. If the class or vendor specific device request does not return any data this value can be set to NULL. **nOutBufferSize** has to be set to zero in this case.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This is equal to the length, in bytes, of the data transfer phase of the class or vendor specific device request. If this value is set to zero then there is no data transfer phase. **lpOutBuffer** should be set to NULL in this case.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds.

Comments

A SETUP request appears on the default pipe (endpoint zero) of the USB device with the parameters defined by means of the **USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST** structure pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. If a data transfer phase is required an IN token appears on the bus and the successful transfer is acknowledged by an OUT token with a zero length data packet. If no data phase is required an IN token appears on the bus with a zero length data packet from the USB device for acknowledge.

If the request will be completed successfully then the variable pointed to by **lpBytesReturned** will be set to the number of data bytes successfully transferred during the data transfer phase of the control transfer.

See Also

USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST (page 107)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST (page 55)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST

The **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST** operation is used to generate a class or vendor specific device request with a data transfer direction from host to device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST** for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to `sizeof(USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST)` for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that contains the data bytes to be transferred to the device during the data phase of the control transfer. If the class or vendor specific device request does not have a data phase this value can be set to **NULL**. **nOutBufferSize** has to be set to zero in this case.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This is equal to the length, in bytes, of the data transfer phase of the class or vendor specific device request. If this value is set to zero then there is no data transfer phase. **lpOutBuffer** should be set to **NULL** in this case.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided **DWORD** variable that will be set to the number of bytes transferred from the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds.

Comments

A **SETUP** request appears on the default pipe (endpoint zero) of the USB device with the parameters defined by means of the **USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST** structure pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. If a data transfer phase is required an **OUT** token appears on the bus and the successful transfer is acknowledged by an **IN** token with a zero length data packet from the device. If no data phase is required an **IN** token appears on the bus and the device acknowledges with a zero length data packet.

If the request will be completed successfully then the variable pointed to by **lpBytesReturned** will be set to the number of data bytes successfully transferred during the data transfer phase of the control transfer.

Although the data buffer is described by the parameters **lpOutBuffer** and **nOutBufferSize** it provides input data for the request. Some confusion is caused by the naming scheme of the Windows API.

See Also

USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST (page 107)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST (page 54)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS operation returns USBIO driver settings related to a device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS).

Comments

The default state of device-related settings is defined by a set of registry parameters which are read by the USBIO driver at startup. The current state can be retrieved by means of this request.

This IOCTL operation retrieves internal driver settings. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 109)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 58)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 77)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 78)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS operation is used to set USBIO driver settings related to a device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The default state of device-related settings is defined by a set of registry parameters which are read by the USBIO driver at startup. The current state can be modified by means of this request.

This IOCTL operation modifies internal driver settings. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 109)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 57)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 77)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 78)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO

The **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO** operation returns information about the pipes and interfaces that are available after the device has been configured.

dwIoControlCode

Set to **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO** for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to `sizeof(USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO)` for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to `sizeof(USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO)`.

Comments

This operation returns information about all active pipes and interfaces that are available in the current configuration.

See Also

USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 115)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION (page 47)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE (page 53)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 48)

IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE

The IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE operation causes a reset at the hub port to which the device is connected.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The following events occur on the bus if this IOCTL request is issued:

USB Reset
GET_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR
USB Reset
SET_ADDRESS
GET_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR
GET_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR

Note that the device receives two USB Resets and a new USB address will be assigned by the USB bus driver USBD.

After the IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE operation is completed the device is in the unconfigured state. Furthermore, all pipes associated with the device will be unbound and all pending read and write requests will be cancelled.

The USBIO driver allows a USB reset request only if the device is configured. That means **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** has been successfully executed. If the device is in the unconfigured state this request returns with an error status. This limitation is caused by the behaviour of Windows 2000. A system crash does occur on Windows 2000 if a USB Reset is issued for an unconfigured device. Therefore, USBIO does not allow to issue a USB Reset while the device is unconfigured.

If the device changes its USB descriptor set during a USB Reset the **IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT** request should be used instead of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE.

This request does not work if the system-provided multi-interface driver is used.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)

IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT (page 69)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER operation returns the current value of the frame number counter that is maintained by the USB bus driver USBBD.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER).

Comments

The frame number returned by this IOCTL operation is an unsigned 32 bit value. The lower 11 bits of this value correspond to the frame number value in the Start Of Frame (SOF) token on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER (page 116)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE operation sets the power state of the USB device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_DEVICE_POWER** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_POWER) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The device power state is maintained internally by the USBIO driver. This request allows to change the current device power state.

If the device is set to a suspend state (any power state different from D0) then all pending requests should be cancelled before a new device power state is set by means of this IOCTL operation.

See also the sections 3.3 (page 32) and the description of the data structure **USBIO_DEVICE_POWER** for more information on power management.

See Also

USBIO_DEVICE_POWER (page 117)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE (page 64)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE

The **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE** operation retrieves the current power state of the device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE** for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_DEVICE_POWER** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to `sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_POWER)` for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to `sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_POWER)`.

Comments

The device power state is maintained internally by the USBIO driver. This request allows to query the current device power state.

See also the sections 3.3 (page 32) and the description of the data structure **USBIO_DEVICE_POWER** for more information on power management.

See Also

USBIO_DEVICE_POWER (page 117)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE (page 63)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO request returns information on the current USB bandwidth consumption.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO).

Comments

This IOCTL operation allows an application to check the bandwidth that is available on the USB. Depending on this information an application can select an appropriate device configuration, if desired.

See Also

USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO (page 93)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO (page 66)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO request returns information on the USB device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_DEVICE_INFO** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_INFO) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_DEVICE_INFO).

Comments

The **USBIO_DEVICE_INFO** data structure returned by this IOCTL request includes a flag that indicates whether a USB 2.0 device operates in high speed mode or not. An application can use this information to detect if a USB 2.0 device is connected to a hub port that is high speed capable.

See Also

USBIO_DEVICE_INFO (page 94)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO (page 65)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO operation returns version information about the USBIO programming interface (API) and the USBIO driver executable that is currently running.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided [USBIO_DRIVER_INFO](#) data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_DRIVER_INFO) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_DRIVER_INFO).

Comments

An application should check if the API version of the USBIO driver that is currently running matches with the version it expects. Newer versions of the USBIO driver API are compatible with older versions. However, the backward compatibility is maintained at the source code level. Thus, applications should be recompiled if a newer version of the USBIO driver is used.

If an application is compiled then the USBIO API version that the application is using is defined by the constant USBIO_API_VERSION in *usbio_i.h*. At runtime the application should always check that the API version of the USBIO driver that is installed in the system is equal to the expected API version defined at compile time by the USBIO_API_VERSION constant. This way, problems caused by version inconsistencies can be avoided.

Note that the USBIO API version and the USBIO driver version are maintained separately. The API version number will be incremented only if changes are made at the API level. The driver version number will be incremented for each USBIO release. Typically, an application does not need to check the USBIO driver version. It can display the driver version number for informational purposes, if desired.

See Also

[USBIO_DRIVER_INFO](#) (page 95)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO (page 66)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO (page 65)

IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT

The IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT operation causes a reset at the hub port to which the device is connected and a new enumeration of the device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT request is similar to the **IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE** request except that from a software point of view a device disconnect/connect is simulated. This request causes the following events to occur:

- The USBIO device object that is associated with the USB device will be removed. The corresponding device handles and pipe handles become invalid and should be closed by the application.
- The operating system starts a new enumeration of the device. The following events occur on the bus:
 - USB Reset
 - GET_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR
 - USB Reset
 - SET_ADDRESS
 - GET_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR
 - GET_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR
- A new device object instance is created by the USBIO driver.
- The application receives a PnP notification that informs it about the new device instance.

After an application issued this request it should close all handles for the current device. It can open the newly created device instance after it receives the appropriate PnP notification.

This request should be used instead of **IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE** if the USB device modifies its descriptors during a USB Reset. Particularly, this is required to

implement the Device Firmware Upgrade (DFU) device class specification. Note that the USB device receives two USB Resets after this call. This does not conform to the DFU specification. However, this is the standard device enumeration method used by the Windows USB bus driver (USBD).

The `IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT` request does not work if the system-provided multi-interface driver is used.

See Also

`IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE` (page 60)

IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE

The IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE acquires the device for exclusive use in the process context where the call is made.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

If a different process has an open handle this operation fails. This operation returns with success if the process has called IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE already. If the operation completes with success, no other process can open a handle to this device until this process closes all handles or this process calls

IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE (page 72)

IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE

The IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE terminates the exclusive use of this device for this process.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

If this function returns with success other processes can open the device. If the last handle is closed the exclusive use is terminated automatically.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE (page 72)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE

The IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE operation is used to establish a binding between a device handle and a pipe object.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided [USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#) data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_BIND_PIPE) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

This IOCTL operation binds a device handle to a pipe object. The pipe is identified by its endpoint address. Only the endpoints that are active in the current configuration can be bound. After this operation is successfully completed the pipe can be accessed using pipe related requests, e.g. read or write requests.

A handle can be bound to one pipe object only. The binding can be deleted by means of [IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE](#) and the handle can be bound to another pipe object by calling IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE again. However, it is recommended to create a separate handle for each pipe that is used to transfer data. This will simplify the implementation of an application.

This IOCTL operation modifies the internal driver state only. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

[USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#) (page 118)

[IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE](#) (page 74)

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 50)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 59)

IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE

The IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE operation deletes the binding between a device handle and a pipe object.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

After this operation is successfully completed the handle is unbound and can be used to bind another pipe. However, it is recommended to create a separate handle for each pipe that is used to transfer data. This will simplify the implementation of an application.

The IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE request can safely be issued on a handle that is not bound to a pipe object. The request has no effect in this case. However, the IOCTL operation will be completed with an error status of USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND.

It is not necessary to unbind a pipe handle before it is closed. Closing a handle unbinds it implicitly.

As a side-effect the IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE operation resets the statistical data of the pipe and disables the calculation of the mean bandwidth. It has to be enabled and configured by means of the **IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS** request when the pipe is reused.

This IOCTL operation modifies the internal driver state only. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 79)

IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE

The IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE operation is used to clear an error condition on a pipe.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

If an error occurs while transferring data from or to the endpoint that is associated with the pipe object then the USB bus driver USBD halts the pipe. No further data transfers can be performed while the pipe is halted. Any read or write request will be completed with an error status of USBIO_ERR_ENDPOINT_HALTED. To recover from this error condition and to restart the pipe an IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE request has to be issued on the pipe.

The IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE operation causes a CLEAR_FEATURE(ENDPOINT_STALL) request on the USB. In addition, the endpoint processing in the USB host controller will be reinitialized.

Isochronous pipes will never be halted by the USB bus driver USBD. This is because on isochronous pipes no handshake protocol is used to detect errors in the data transmission.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE (page 76)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE

The IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE operation is used to cancel all outstanding read and write requests on a pipe.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

All outstanding read or write requests on the pipe will be aborted and returned with an error status of USBIO_ERR_CANCELED.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of [IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#). Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND.

See Also

[IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE](#) (page 75)

[IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#) (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS

The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS operation returns USBIO driver settings related to a pipe.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nInBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS** data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS).

Comments

The default state of pipe-related settings is defined by a set of registry parameters which are read by the USBIO driver at startup. The current state can be retrieved by means of this request.

Note that a separate set of pipe settings is maintained per pipe object. The IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS request retrieves the actual settings of that pipe object that is bound to the handle on which the request is issued.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND.

This IOCTL operation retrieves internal driver settings. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 119)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 78)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 57)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 58)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS

The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS operation is used to set USBIO driver settings related to a pipe.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The default state of pipe-related settings is defined by a set of registry parameters which are read by the USBIO driver at startup. The current state can be modified by means of this request.

Note that a separate set of pipe settings is maintained per pipe object. The IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS request modifies the settings of that pipe object that is bound to the handle on which the request is issued.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND.

This IOCTL operation modifies internal driver settings. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 119)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS (page 77)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 57)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 58)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS

The IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS request enables or disables a statistical analysis of the data transfer on a pipe.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS** data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Not used with this operation. Set to NULL.

nOutBufferSize

Not used with this operation. Set to zero.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable. The value of this variable is meaningless in the context of this IOCTL operation.

Comments

The USBIO driver is able to analyse the data transfer (outgoing or incoming) on a pipe and to calculate the average data rate on that pipe. A time averaging algorithm is used to continuously compute the mean value of the data transfer rate. In order to save resources (kernel memory and CPU cycles) the average data rate computation is disabled by default. It has to be enabled and to be configured by means of the IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS request before it is available to an application. See also **IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS** and **USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS** for more information on pipe statistics.

Note that the statistical data is maintained separately for each pipe object. The IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS request has an effect on that pipe object only that is bound to the handle on which the request is issued.

If a pipe is unbound from the device handle by means of the **IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE** operation or by closing the handle then the average data rate computation will be disabled. It has to be enabled and configured when the pipe is reused. In other words, if the data rate computation is needed by an application then the IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS request should be issued immediately after the pipe is bound by means of the **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE** operation.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND.

This IOCTL operation modifies internal driver settings. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 120)

USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 123)

IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 81)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS

The IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS operation returns statistical data related to a pipe.

dwIoControlCode

Set to IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided [USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) data structure. This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS) for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) data structure. This data structure will receive the results of the IOCTL operation.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This value has to be set to sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS) for this operation.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds. The returned value will be equal to sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS).

Comments

The USBIO device driver internally maintains some statistical data per pipe object. This IOCTL request allows an application to query the actual values of the various statistics counters. Optionally, individual counters can be reset to zero after queried. See [USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) and [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for more information on pipe statistics.

The USBIO device driver is able to analyse the data transfer (outgoing or incoming) on a pipe and to calculate the average data rate on that pipe. In order to save resources (kernel memory and CPU cycles) this feature is disabled by default. It has to be enabled and to be configured by means of the [IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) request before it is available to an application. Thus, before an application starts to (periodically) query the value of **AverageRate** that is included in the data structure [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) it has to enable the continuous computation of this value by issuing an [IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) request. The other statistical counters contained in the [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) structure will be updated by default and do not need to be enabled explicitly.

Note that the statistical data is maintained separately for each pipe object. The IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS request retrieves the actual statistics of that pipe object that is bound to the handle on which the request is issued.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of **USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND**.

This IOCTL operation retrieves internal driver information. It does not cause any action on the USB.

See Also

USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 121)

USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 123)

IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 79)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN

The **IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN** operation is used to generate a specific request (SETUP packet) for a control pipe with a data transfer direction from device to host.

dwIoControlCode

Set to **IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN** for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER** data structure.

This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to `sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER)` for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that will receive the data bytes transferred from the device during the data phase of the control transfer. If the SETUP request does not return any data this value can be set to NULL. **nOutBufferSize** has to be set to zero in this case.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This is equal to the length, in bytes, of the data transfer phase of the SETUP request. If this value is set to zero then there is no data transfer phase. **lpOutBuffer** should be set to NULL in this case.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes returned in the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds.

Comments

This request is intended to be used with additional control pipes a device might provide. It is not possible to generate a control transfer for the default endpoint zero by means of this IOCTL operation.

If the request will be completed successfully then the variable pointed to by **lpBytesReturned** will be set to the number of data bytes successfully transferred during the data transfer phase of the control transfer.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of **USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND**.

See Also

USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER (page 125)

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT (page 84)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT

The **IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT** operation is used to generate a specific request (SETUP packet) for a control pipe with a data transfer direction from host to device.

dwIoControlCode

Set to **IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT** for this operation.

lpInBuffer

Points to a caller-provided **USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER** data structure.

This data structure has to be initialized by the caller. It provides input parameters for the IOCTL operation.

nInBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpInBuffer**. This value has to be set to `sizeof(USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER)` for this operation.

lpOutBuffer

Points to a caller-provided buffer that contains the data bytes to be transferred to the device during the data phase of the control transfer. If the SETUP request does not have a data phase this value can be set to NULL. **nOutBufferSize** has to be set to zero in this case.

nOutBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer**. This is equal to the length, in bytes, of the data transfer phase of the SETUP request. If this value is set to zero then there is no data transfer phase. **lpOutBuffer** should be set to NULL in this case.

lpBytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided DWORD variable that will be set to the number of bytes transferred from the buffer pointed to by **lpOutBuffer** if the request succeeds.

Comments

This request is intended to be used with additional control pipes a device might provide. It is not possible to generate a control transfer for the default endpoint zero by means of this IOCTL operation.

If the request will be completed successfully then the variable pointed to by **lpBytesReturned** will be set to the number of data bytes successfully transferred during the data transfer phase of the control transfer.

Although the data buffer is described by the parameters **lpOutBuffer** and **nOutBufferSize** it provides input data for the request. Some confusion is caused by the naming scheme of the Windows API.

This IOCTL operation requires that the handle on which the operation is performed has been bound to a pipe object by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE**. Otherwise, the IOCTL operation will fail with an error status of **USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND**.

See Also

USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER (page 125)

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN (page 83)

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

5.3 Data Transfer Requests

The USBIO device driver exports an interface to USB pipes that is similar to files. For that reason the Win32 API functions **ReadFile()** and **WriteFile()** are used to transfer data from or to a pipe. The handle that is associated with the USB pipe is passed as **hFile** to these functions.

The **ReadFile()** function is defined as follows:

```
BOOL ReadFile(  
    HANDLE hFile,          // handle of file to read  
    LPVOID lpBuffer,      // pointer to buffer that receives data  
    DWORD nNumberOfBytesToRead, // number of bytes to read  
    LPDWORD lpNumberOfBytesRead, // pointer to number of bytes read  
    LPOVERLAPPED lpOverlapped // pointer to OVERLAPPED structure  
);
```

The **WriteFile()** function is defined as follows:

```
BOOL WriteFile(  
    HANDLE hFile,          // handle of file to write  
    LPVOID lpBuffer,      // pointer to data to write to file  
    DWORD nNumberOfBytesToWrite, // number of bytes to write  
    LPDWORD lpNumberOfBytesWritten, // pointer to number of bytes written  
    LPOVERLAPPED lpOverlapped // pointer to OVERLAPPED structure  
);
```

By using these functions it is possible to implement both synchronous and asynchronous data transfer operations. Both methods are fully supported by the USBIO driver. Refer to the Microsoft Platform SDK documentation for more information on using the **ReadFile()** and **WriteFile()** functions.

5.3.1 Bulk and Interrupt Transfers

For interrupt and bulk transfers the buffer size can be larger than the maximum packet size of the endpoint (physical FIFO size) as reported in the endpoint descriptor. But the buffer size has to be equal or smaller than the value specified in the **MaximumTransferSize** field of the **USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING** structure on the Set Configuration call.

Bulk or Interrupt Write Transfers

The write operation is used to transfer data from the host (PC) to the USB device. The buffer is divided into data pieces (packets) of the FIFO size of the endpoint. These packets are sent to the USB device. If the last packet of the buffer is smaller than the FIFO size a smaller data packet is transferred. If the size of the last packet of the buffer is equal to the FIFO size this packet is sent. No additional zero packet is sent automatically. To send a data packet with length zero, set the buffer length to zero and use a NULL buffer pointer.

Bulk or Interrupt Read Transfers

The read operation is used to transfer data from the USB device to the host (PC). The buffer is divided into data pieces (packets) of the FIFO size of the endpoint. The buffer size should be a multiple of the FIFO size. Otherwise the last transaction can cause a buffer overflow error.

A read operation will be completed if the whole buffer is filled or a short packet is transmitted. A short packet is a packet that is smaller than the FIFO size of the endpoint. To read a data packet with a length of zero, the buffer size has to be at least one byte. A read operation with a NULL buffer pointer will be completed with success without performing a read operation on the USB.

The behaviour during a read operation depends on the state of the flag **USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK** of the related pipe. This setting may be changed by using the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS** operation. The default state is defined by the registry parameter **ShortTransferOk**. If the flag **USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK** is set a read operation that returns a data packet that is shorter than the FIFO size of the endpoint is completed with success. Otherwise, every data packet from the endpoint that is smaller than the FIFO size causes an error.

5.3.2 Isochronous Transfers

For isochronous transfers the data buffer that is passed to the **ReadFile()** or **WriteFile()** function has to contain a header that describes the location and the size of the data packets to be transferred. The rest of the buffer is divided into packets. Each packet is transmitted within a USB frame or microframe respectively. The packet size can vary for each frame. Even a packet size of zero bytes is allowed. This way, any data rate of the isochronous stream is supported.

In full-speed mode (12 Mbit/s) one isochronous packet is transmitted per USB frame. A USB frame corresponds to 1 millisecond. Thus, one packet is transferred per millisecond.

A USB 2.0 compliant device that operates in high-speed mode (480 Mbit/s) reports the isochronous frame rate for each isochronous endpoint in the corresponding endpoint descriptor. Normally, one packet is transferred per microframe. A microframe corresponds to 125 microseconds. However, it is possible to request multiple packet transfers per microframe. It is also possible to reduce the frame rate and to transfer one isochronous packet every N microframes.

The layout of a buffer that holds isochronous data is shown in figure 3. At the beginning, the buffer contains a **USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER** structure of variable size. The rest of the buffer holds the data packets. The header contains a **USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER** structure that provides general information about the transfer buffer. An important member of this structure is **NumberOfPackets**. This parameter specifies the number of isochronous data packets contained in the transfer buffer. The maximum number of packets that can be used in a single transfer is limited by the USBIO configuration parameter **MaxIsoPackets** that is defined in the registry. See also section 10 (page 283) for more information.

Each data packet that is contained in the buffer has to be described by a **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structure. For that purpose, the header contains an array of **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structures. Because the number of packets contained in a buffer is variable, the size of this array is variable as well.

The **Offset** member of the **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structure specifies the byte offset of the corresponding packet relative to the beginning of the whole buffer. The offset of each isochronous data packet has to be specified by the application for both read and write transfers. The **Length** member defines the length, in bytes, of the corresponding packet. For write transfers, the length of each isochronous data packet has to be specified by the application before the transfer is initiated. For read transfers, the length of each packet is returned by the USBIO driver after the transfer is finished. On both read and write operations, the **Status** member of **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** is

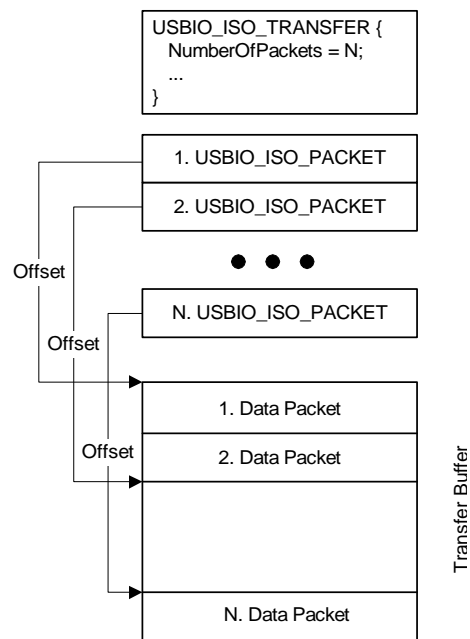


Figure 3: Layout of an isochronous transfer buffer

used to return the transfer completion status for the corresponding packet.

Isochronous data require a guaranteed bandwidth on the bus. To make sure that the host controller sends a gap less stream of IN or OUT tokens on the bus there must be always a pending data transfer buffer at the HC. To archive this the application must use the asynchronous (overlapped) IO requests. Some of the API's like the USBIOLIB, USBIOCOM interface, and the USBIO API DLL have an internal support for buffer circulation and asynchronous IO.

The total number of frames in pending requests to one ISO pipe is limited to 1024 by the API documentation of the USB D driver. This number is calculated as the product of the number of pending buffers and the parameter `NumberOfPackets`. On Windows XP and XP SP1 this product must be less or equal to 256, see `problems.txt`.

Isochronous Write Transfers

There are some constraints that apply to isochronous write operations. The length of each isochronous packet has to be less than or equal to the FIFO size of the respective endpoint. The data packets have to be placed contiguously into the buffer. In other words, there are no gaps between the packets allowed. The `Offset` and `Length` member of all **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structures have to be initialized correctly by the application before the transfer is initiated.

Isochronous Read Transfers

There are some constraints that apply to isochronous read operations. The length of each packet reserved in the buffer should be equal to the FIFO size of the respective endpoint. Otherwise, a data overrun error can occur. The data packets have to be placed contiguously into the buffer.

In other words, there are no gaps between the packets allowed. The Offset member of all **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structures has to be initialized correctly by the application before the transfer is initiated. The length of each isochronous data packet received from the device is returned in the Length member of the corresponding **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structure when the transfer of the whole buffer completes.

Note:

Because the length of an isochronous data packet that is received from the device may be smaller than the FIFO size, the data packets are not placed contiguously into the buffer. After the transfer of a buffer is complete an application needs to evaluate the Length member of all **USBIO_ISO_PACKET** structures to learn about the amount of valid data available in the corresponding packet.

5.4 Error Handling

All data transfers on USB are protected with a CRC. The data transfers on bulk, interrupt, and control endpoints are protected additionally with a hardware handshake (ACK, NAK) and a hardware retry. This means if the receiver does not correctly receives a data block it does not send a handshake and the host controller retries the data transmission up to three times. The control endpoint has an additional error protection mechanism with a software generated handshake signal which is a zero length data packet.

Nevertheless a data transmission on the USB may be disturbed. The software on the PC and on the device site should implement a protocol to continue the data transfer after a transmission error. The following sections describe possible error handling mechanism for different transmission types.

5.4.1 Control Transfers

Typically a control transfer changes the state of the device. If a control transfer fails the PC can resubmit the same transfer. All possible error conditions on the control endpoint are automatically cleared with the next setup. In the case of an error the PC software can not determine if the error has been occurred in the handshake phase or in the setup phase. This means it cannot recover if the setup request was performed partially or completely. This is not a problem if the setup sets an absolute state (e.g. a register value or a memory block). It may be a problem if a state is changed incrementally (e.g. a counter is incremented with a request). In this case a more complex error recovery is required.

5.4.2 Bulk and Interrupt Transfers

If a transmission error on a bulk or interrupt pipe occurs the host controller driver sets an internal error condition. This error condition must be reset with a call to the function `ResetPipe` or **`IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE`** by the PC software. This function call creates the standard request Clear Feature Endpoint Halt on the USB which contains the endpoint number. This request informs the device that the data transfer was completed with a error. The error handling can be performed in two ways:

- With data lost
- Without data lost

In the case with data lost the error handling is very simple. The device clears the related endpoint FIFO and continues sending or receiving data. The PC submits the next buffer. This method can be used if a higher level protocol can run on a unreliable data connection.

To perform a error recovery without data lost both sites the PC and the device software must agree on a logical block size. The logical block size must be a multiple of the FIFO size. The device must be able to store a logical block until the last FIFO sized chunk is transferred successfully. Short transfers are allowed and must be finished with a USB short packet. If the device receives a Clear Feature Endpoint Halt it must clear the FIFO and reset the logical buffer. On a IN pipe (data transfer from device to PC) the device must resubmit the logical buffer from the beginning. On a OUT pipe it must clear the logical buffer and expect to receive the data of this logical block again. If the PC software works asynchronous (overlapped) it must stop the buffer circulation with

a call to the function `AbortPipe` or **`IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE`**. Then it calls the function `ResetPipe` or **`IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE`**. After this it restarts the reading or writing on the pipe with all buffers which have been not yet successfully transmitted.

One problem on this method is the selection of a reasonable logical buffer size. If the logical buffer size is too small the data rate may be low and the CPU load is high. If the logical buffer size is large the device must spend a larger amount of memory for this buffer.

5.4.3 Isochronous Transfers

Isochronous transfers contain a CRC but are not handshaked. The sender of a isochronous data packet cannot determine if the data block is transferred correctly. The receiver can check the CRC for each packet. The USB specification defines that isochronous endpoints are never stopped. But the Windows host controller driver sets a internal error condition if the PC is too slow to transfer a continuous data stream. This error condition must be cleared with a call to the function `ResetPipe` or **`IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE`**. The host controller driver does not send a Clear Feature Endpoint Halt request on the bus.

A data transfer with error causes a data lost on a isochronous pipe.

Test in our laboratories have shown that a isochronous IN pipe with a data rate of 128 kbit on a full speed connection can run for 72 hours without any error. On the other hand we have done a field test with about 100 PCs. We have seen two PCs which have a transmission error on the isochronous pipe about every 2 minutes. This means the USB error rate can be very low but on some PCs the error rate can be much more higher. It may be interesting to know that other devices like memory sticks or still image cameras were working fine on the PCs which cause the isochronous errors.

5.4.4 Test the Error Handling

Because the error rate on USB is very low it is difficult to test the correct behavior of the error handling implementation. We have tried to inject electrical signals in the USB lines. But if the injection disturbs the SOF the parent HUB disables the device and the error handling cannot be tested. A better idea is that the receiving site causes randomly or periodically a hardware error. The PC software can do this by reading with a buffer size of only one byte. This causes the HC to report a buffer overrun error if the device sends more than one byte. The device can emulate a transmission error by setting the endpoint to stall. The PC software should handle the stall as a normal hardware error like a CRC, Bitstuff, or EXACT error. If the error handling implementation is correct and the error recovery without data lost is implemented no data should be lost.

5.5 Data Structures

This section provides a detailed description of the data structures that are used in conjunction with the various input and output requests.

USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO

The `USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO` structure contains information on the USB bandwidth consumption.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO{
    ULONG TotalBandwidth;
    ULONG ConsumedBandwidth;
    ULONG reserved1;
    ULONG reserved2;
} USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO;
```

Members

TotalBandwidth

This field contains the total bandwidth, in kilobits per second, available on the bus. This bandwidth is provided by the USB host controller the device is connected to.

ConsumedBandwidth

This field contains the mean bandwidth that is already in use, in kilobits per second.

reserved1

This member is reserved for future use.

reserved2

This member is reserved for future use.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the [**IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO**](#) operation.

See Also

[**IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO**](#) (page 65)

USBIO_DEVICE_INFO

The USBIO_DEVICE_INFO structure contains information on the USB device.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_DEVICE_INFO{
    ULONG Flags;
    ULONG OpenCount;
    ULONG reserved1;
    ULONG reserved2;
} USBIO_DEVICE_INFO;
```

Members

Flags

This field contains zero or any combination (bit-wise or) of the following values.

USBIO_DEVICE_INFOFLAG_HIGH_SPEED

If this flag is set then the USB device operates in high speed mode. The USB 2.0 device is connected to a hub port that is high speed capable.

Note that this flag does not indicate whether a device is capable of high speed operation, but rather whether it is in fact operating at high speed.

OpenCount

This member returns the number of open file handles to the device including the handle which is used to submit this request.

reserved1

This member is reserved for future use.

reserved2

This member is reserved for future use.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO (page 66)

USBIO_DRIVER_INFO

The `USBIO_DRIVER_INFO` structure contains version information about the USBIO programming interface (API) and the USBIO driver executable.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_DRIVER_INFO{
    USHORT APIVersion;
    USHORT DriverVersion;
    ULONG DriverBuildNumber;
    ULONG Flags;
} USBIO_DRIVER_INFO;
```

Members

APIVersion

Contains the version number of the application programming interface (API) the driver supports. The format is as follows: upper 8 bit = major version, lower 8 bit = minor version. The numbers are encoded in BCD format. For example, V1.41 is represented by a numerical value of 0x0141.

The API version number will be incremented if changes are made at the API level. An application should check the API version at runtime. Refer to the description of the [**IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO**](#) request for detailed information on how this should be implemented.

DriverVersion

Contains the version number of the driver executable. The format is as follows: upper 8 bit = major version, lower 8 bit = minor version. For example, V1.41 is represented by a numerical value of 0x0129.

The driver version number will be incremented for each USBIO release. Typically, an application uses the driver version number for informational purposes only. Refer to the description of the [**IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO**](#) request for more information.

DriverBuildNumber

Contains the build number of the driver executable. This number will be incremented for each build of the USBIO driver executable. The driver build number should be understood as an extension of the driver version number.

Flags

This field contains zero if the USBIO driver executable is a full version release build without any restrictions. Otherwise, this field contains any combination (bit-wise or) of the following values.

USBIO_INFOFLAG_CHECKED_BUILD

If this flag is set then the driver executable is a checked (debug) build. The checked driver executable provides additional tracing and debug features.

USBIO_INFOFLAG_DEMO_VERSION

If this flag is set then the driver executable is a DEMO version. The DEMO version has some restrictions. Refer to the file *ReadMe.txt* included in the USBIO package for a detailed description of these restrictions.

USBIO_INFOFLAG_LIGHT_VERSION

If this flag is set then the driver executable is a LIGHT version. The LIGHT version has some restrictions. Refer to the file *ReadMe.txt* included in the USBIO package for a detailed description of these restrictions.

USBIO_INFOFLAG_VS_LIGHT_VERSION

If this flag is set in addition to `USBIO_INFOFLAG_LIGHT_VERSION` the driver executable is a Vendor-Specific LIGHT version that has specific restrictions. Refer to the file *ReadMe.txt* included in the USBIO package for a detailed description of these restrictions.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the **`IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO`** operation.

See Also

`IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO` (page 67)

USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST

The USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST structure provides information used to get or set a descriptor.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST{
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient;
    UCHAR DescriptorType;
    UCHAR DescriptorIndex;
    USHORT LanguageId;
} USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST;
```

Members

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the get or set descriptor request. The values are defined by the enumeration type [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

DescriptorType

Specifies the type of descriptor to get or set. The values are defined by the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 and additional USB device class specifications.

Value	Meaning
1	Device Descriptor
2	Configuration Descriptor
3	String Descriptor
4	Interface Descriptor
5	Endpoint Descriptor
21	HID Descriptor

DescriptorIndex

Specifies the index of the descriptor to get or set.

LanguageId

Specifies the Language ID of the descriptor to get or set. This is used for string descriptors only. This field is set to zero for other descriptors.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR](#) and the [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR](#) operation.

See Also

USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT (page 131)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR (page 42)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR (page 43)

USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST

The `USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST` structure provides information used to set or clear a specific feature.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST{
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient;
    USHORT FeatureSelector;
    USHORT Index;
} USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST;
```

Members

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the set feature or clear feature request. The values are defined by the enumeration type [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

FeatureSelector

Specifies the feature selector value for the set feature or clear feature request. The values are defined by the recipient. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Index

Specifies the index value for the set feature or clear feature request. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE](#) and the [IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE](#) operation.

See Also

[USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#) (page 131)

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE](#) (page 44)

[IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE](#) (page 45)

USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST

The `USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST` structure provides information used to request status for a specified recipient.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST{
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient;
    USHORT Index;
} USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST;
```

Members

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the get status request. The values are defined by the enumeration type [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

Index

Specifies the index value for the get status request. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) operation.

See Also

[USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#) (page 131)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) (page 46)

USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA

The `USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA` structure contains information returned by a get status operation.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA{  
    USHORT Status;  
} USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA;
```

Member

Status

Contains the 16-bit value that is returned by the recipient in response to the get status request. The interpretation of the value is specific to the recipient. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) operation.

See Also

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) (page 46)

USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA

The `USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA` structure contains information returned by a get configuration operation.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA{  
    UCHAR ConfigurationValue;  
} USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA;
```

*Member***ConfigurationValue**

Contains the 8-bit value that is returned by the device in response to the get configuration request. The meaning of the value is defined by the device. A value of zero means the device is not configured. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION (page 47)

USBIO_GET_INTERFACE

The `USBIO_GET_INTERFACE` structure provides information used to query the current alternate setting of an interface.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_GET_INTERFACE{  
    USHORT Interface;  
} USBIO_GET_INTERFACE;
```

Member

Interface

Specifies the interface number of the interface to be queried. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 48)

USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA

The USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA structure contains information returned by a get interface operation.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA{  
    UCHAR AlternateSetting;  
} USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA;
```

Member

AlternateSetting

Contains the 8-bit value that is returned by the device in response to a get interface request. The interpretation of the value is specific to the device. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 48)

USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING

The `USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING` structure provides information used to configure an interface and its endpoints.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING{
    USHORT InterfaceIndex;
    USHORT AlternateSettingIndex;
    ULONG MaximumTransferSize;
} USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING;
```

Members

InterfaceIndex

Specifies the interface number of the interface to be configured. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

AlternateSettingIndex

Specifies the alternate setting to be set for the interface. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

MaximumTransferSize

Specifies the maximum length, in bytes, of data transfers to or from endpoints of this interface. The value is user-defined and is valid for all endpoints of this interface. If no special requirement exists a value of 4096 (4K) should be used.

Comments

This structure provides input parameters for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE** and the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE (page 53)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)

USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 106)

USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION

The `USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION` structure provides information used to set the device configuration.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION{
    USHORT ConfigurationIndex;
    USHORT NbOfInterfaces;
    USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING
        InterfaceList[USBIO_MAX_INTERFACES];
} USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION;
```

Members

ConfigurationIndex

Specifies the configuration to be set as a zero-based index. The given index is used to query the associated configuration descriptor (by means of a `GET_DESCRIPTOR` request). The configuration value that is contained in the configuration descriptor is used for the `SET_CONFIGURATION` request. The configuration value is defined by the device.

For single-configuration devices the only valid value for **ConfigurationIndex** is zero.

Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

NbOfInterfaces

Specifies the number of interfaces in this configuration. This is the number of valid entries in **InterfaceList**.

InterfaceList[USBIO_MAX_INTERFACES]

An array of **USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING** structures that describes each interface in the configuration. There have to be **NbOfInterfaces** valid entries in this array.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** operation.

See Also

USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING (page 105)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)

USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST

The `USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST` structure provides information used to generate a class or vendor specific device request.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST{
    ULONG Flags;
    USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE Type;
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient;
    UCHAR RequestTypeReservedBits;
    UCHAR Request;
    USHORT Value;
    USHORT Index;
} USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST;
```

Members

Flags

This field contains zero or the following value.

USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK

If this flag is set then the USBIO driver does not return an error if a data packet received from the device is shorter than the maximum packet size of the endpoint. If this flag is not set then a short packet causes an error condition.

Type

Specifies the type of the device request. The values are defined by the enumeration type [USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE](#).

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the device request. The values are defined by the enumeration type [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

RequestTypeReservedBits

Specifies the reserved bits of the `bmRequestType` field of the SETUP packet.

Request

Specifies the value of the `bRequest` field of the SETUP packet.

Value

Specifies the value of the `wValue` field of the SETUP packet.

Index

Specifies the value of the `wIndex` field of the SETUP packet.

Comments

The values defined by this structure are used to generate an eight byte SETUP packet for the default control endpoint (endpoint zero) of the device. The format of the SETUP packet is defined by the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9. The meaning of the values is defined by the device.

This structure provides the input parameters for the **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST** and the **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST** operation.

See Also

USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE (page 132)

USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT (page 131)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST (page 54)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST (page 55)

USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS

The `USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS` structure contains USBIO driver settings related to a device.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS{
    ULONG Options;
    ULONG RequestTimeout;
} USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS;
```

Members

Options

This field contains zero or any combination (bit-wise or) of the following values.

USBIO_RESET_DEVICE_ON_CLOSE

If this option is set then the USBIO driver generates a USB device reset after the last handle for a device has been closed by the application. If this option is active then the **USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_ON_CLOSE** flag will be ignored.

The default state of this option is defined by the registry parameter **ResetDeviceOnClose**. Refer to section 8.3.5 (page 273) for more information.

USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_ON_CLOSE

If this option is set then the USBIO driver sets the USB device to its unconfigured state after the last handle for the device has been closed by the application.

The default state of this option is defined by the registry parameter **UnconfigureOnClose**. Refer to section 8.3.5 (page 273) for more information.

USBIO_ENABLE_REMOTE_WAKEUP

If this option is set and the USB device supports the Remote Wakeup feature the USBIO driver will support Remote Wakeup for the operating system. That means the USB device is able to awake the system from a sleep state. The Remote Wakeup feature is defined by the USB 1.1 specification.

The Remote Wakeup feature requires that the device is opened by an application and that a USB configuration is set (device is configured).

The default state of this option is defined by the registry parameter **EnableRemoteWakeup**. Refer to section 8.3.5 (page 273) for more information.

RequestTimeout

Specifies the time-out interval, in milliseconds, to be used for synchronous operations. A value of zero means an infinite interval (time-out disabled).

The default time-out value is defined by the registry parameter **RequestTimeout**. Refer to section 8.3.5 (page 273) for more information.

Comments

This structure is intended to be used with the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** and the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** operations.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 57)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 58)

USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO

The `USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO` structure provides information about an interface.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO{
    UCHAR InterfaceNumber;
    UCHAR AlternateSetting;
    UCHAR Class;
    UCHAR SubClass;
    UCHAR Protocol;
    UCHAR NumberOfPipes;
    UCHAR reserved1;
    UCHAR reserved2;
} USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO;
```

Members

InterfaceNumber

Specifies the index of the interface as reported by the device in the configuration descriptor.

AlternateSetting

Specifies the index of the alternate setting as reported by the device in the configuration descriptor. The default alternate setting of an interface is zero.

Class

Specifies the class code as reported by the device in the configuration descriptor. The meaning of this value is defined by USB device class specifications.

SubClass

Specifies the subclass code as reported by the device in the configuration descriptor. The meaning of this value is defined by USB device class specifications.

Protocol

Specifies the protocol code as reported by the device in the configuration descriptor. The meaning of this value is defined by USB device class specifications.

NumberOfPipes

Specifies the number of pipes that belong to this interface and alternate setting.

reserved1

Reserved field, set to zero.

reserved2

Reserved field, set to zero.

Comments

This structure returns results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO** operation. It is a substructure within the **USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO** structure.

See Also

USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 115)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 59)

USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO

The USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO structure provides information about a pipe.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO{
    USBIO_PIPE_TYPE PipeType;
    ULONG MaximumTransferSize;
    USHORT MaximumPacketSize;
    UCHAR EndpointAddress;
    UCHAR Interval;
    UCHAR InterfaceNumber;
    UCHAR reserved1;
    UCHAR reserved2;
    UCHAR reserved3;
} USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO;
```

Members

PipeType

Specifies the type of the pipe. The values are defined by the enumeration type [USBIO_PIPE_TYPE](#).

MaximumTransferSize

Specifies the maximum size, in bytes, of data transfers the USB bus driver USBBD supports on this pipe. This is the maximum size of buffers that can be used with read or write operations on this pipe.

MaximumPacketSize

Specifies the maximum packet size of USB data transfers the endpoint is capable of sending or receiving. This is also referred to as FIFO size. The **MaximumPacketSize** value is reported by the device in the corresponding endpoint descriptor. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

EndpointAddress

Specifies the address of the endpoint on the USB device as reported in the corresponding endpoint descriptor.

The endpoint address includes the direction flag at bit position 7 (MSB).

Bit 7 = 0: OUT endpoint

Bit 7 = 1: IN endpoint

Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Interval

Specifies the interval, in milliseconds, for polling the endpoint for data as reported in the corresponding endpoint descriptor. This value is meaningful for interrupt endpoints only. Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

InterfaceNumber

Specifies the index of the interface the pipe belongs to. The value is equal to the field **InterfaceNumber** of the corresponding **USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO** structure.

reserved1

Reserved field, set to zero.

reserved2

Reserved field, set to zero.

reserved3

Reserved field, set to zero.

Comments

This structure returns results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO** operation. It is a substructure within the **USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO** structure.

See Also

USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 115)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO (page 59)

USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO

The `USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO` structure provides information about the interfaces and pipes available in the current configuration.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO{
    ULONG NbOfInterfaces;
    ULONG NbOfPipes;
    USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO
        InterfaceInfo[USBIO_MAX_INTERFACES];
    USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO
        PipeInfo[USBIO_MAX_PIPES];
} USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO;
```

Members

NbOfInterfaces

Specifies the number of interfaces active in the current configuration. This value corresponds to the number of valid entries in the **InterfaceInfo** array.

NbOfPipes

Specifies the number of pipes active in the current configuration. This value corresponds to the number of valid entries in the **PipeInfo** array.

InterfaceInfo[USBIO_MAX_INTERFACES]

An array of [USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) structures that describes the interfaces that are active in the current configuration. There are **NbOfInterfaces** valid entries in this array.

PipeInfo[USBIO_MAX_PIPES]

An array of [USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) structures that describes the pipes that are active in the current configuration. There are **NbOfPipes** valid entries in this array.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) operation.

Note that the data structure includes only those interfaces and pipes that are activated by the current configuration according to the configuration descriptor.

See Also

[USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 111)

[USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 113)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 59)

USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER

The USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER structure contains information about the USB frame counter value.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER{  
    ULONG FrameNumber;  
} USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER;
```

Member

FrameNumber

Specifies the current value of the frame counter that is maintained by the USB bus driver USBD. The frame number is an unsigned 32 bit value. The lower 11 bits of this value correspond to the frame number value in the Start Of Frame (SOF) token on the USB.

Comments

This structure returns the results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER (page 62)

USBIO_DEVICE_POWER

The USBIO_DEVICE_POWER structure contains information about the power state of the USB device.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_DEVICE_POWER{  
    USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE DevicePowerState;  
} USBIO_DEVICE_POWER;
```

Member

DevicePowerState

Specifies the power state of the USB device. The values are defined by the [USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) enumeration type.

Comments

This structure is intended to be used with the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) and the [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) operations.

See Also

[USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 133)
[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 64)
[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 63)

USBIO_BIND_PIPE

The USBIO_BIND_PIPE structure provides information on the pipe to bind to.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_BIND_PIPE{  
    UCHAR EndpointAddress;  
} USBIO_BIND_PIPE;
```

Member

EndpointAddress

Specifies the address of the endpoint of the USB device that corresponds to the pipe. The endpoint address is specified as reported in the corresponding endpoint descriptor. It identifies the pipe unambiguously.

The endpoint address includes the direction flag at bit position 7 (MSB).

Bit 7 = 0: OUT endpoint

Bit 7 = 1: IN endpoint

Refer to the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9 for more information.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS

The USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS structure contains USBIO driver settings related to a pipe.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS{
    ULONG Flags;
} USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS;
```

Member

Flags

This field contains zero or the following value.

USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK

If this flag is set then the USBIO driver does not return an error during read operations from a Bulk or Interrupt pipe if a packet received from the device is shorter than the maximum packet size of the endpoint. If this flag is not set then a short packet causes an error condition.

Note that this option is meaningful for Bulk or Interrupt IN pipes only. It has an effect only for read operations from Bulk or Interrupt pipes. For Isochronous pipes the flags in the appropriate ISO data structures are used (see [USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER](#)).

The default state of the USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK flag is defined by the registry parameter **ShortTransferOk**. Refer to section [8.3.5](#) (page [273](#)) for more information.

Comments

This structure is intended to be used with the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) and the [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) operations.

See Also

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page [77](#))

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page [78](#))

[USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER](#) (page [126](#))

USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS

The `USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS` structure contains information used to configure the statistics maintained by the USBIO driver for a pipe.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS{
    ULONG AveragingInterval;
    UCHAR reserved1;
    UCHAR reserved2;
} USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS;
```

Members

AveragingInterval

Specifies the time interval, in milliseconds, that is used to calculate the average data rate of the pipe. A time averaging algorithm is used to continuously compute the mean value of the data transfer rate. The USBIO driver internally allocates memory to implement an averaging filter. There are 2048 bytes of memory required per second of the averaging interval. To limit the memory consumption the maximum supported value of **AveragingInterval** is 5000 milliseconds (5 seconds). If a longer interval is specified then the [IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) request will fail with an error status of [USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAMETER](#). It is recommended to use an averaging interval of 1000 milliseconds.

If **AveragingInterval** is set to zero then the average data rate computation is disabled. This is the default state. An application should only enable the average data rate computation if it is needed. This will save resources (kernel memory and CPU cycles).

See also [IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) and [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for more information on pipe statistics.

reserved1

This member is reserved for future use. It has to be set to zero.

reserved2

This member is reserved for future use. It has to be set to zero.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the [IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) operation.

See Also

[IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 79)
[IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 81)
[USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 123)

USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS

The `USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS` structure provides options that modify the behaviour of the `IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS` operation.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS{
    ULONG Flags;
} USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS;
```

Member

Flags

This field contains zero or any combination (bit-wise or) of the following values.

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_BYTES_TRANSFERRED

If this flag is specified then the BytesTransferred counter will be reset to zero after its current value has been captured. The BytesTransferred counter is an unsigned 64 bit integer. It counts the total number of bytes transferred on a pipe, modulo 2^{64} .

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_REQUESTS_SUCCEEDED

If this flag is specified then the RequestsSucceeded counter will be reset to zero after its current value has been captured. The RequestsSucceeded counter is an unsigned 32 bit integer. It counts the total number of read or write requests that have been completed successfully on a pipe, modulo 2^{32} .

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_REQUESTS_FAILED

If this flag is specified then the RequestsFailed counter will be reset to zero after its current value has been captured. The RequestsFailed counter is an unsigned 32 bit integer. It counts the total number of read or write requests that have been completed with an error status on a pipe, modulo 2^{32} .

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_ALL_COUNTERS

This value combines the three flags described above. If

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_ALL_COUNTERS is specified then all three counters BytesTransferred, RequestsSucceeded, and RequestsFailed will be reset to zero after their current values have been captured.

Comments

This structure provides the input parameters for the `IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS` operation.

See also the description of the `USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS` data structure for more information on pipe statistics.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 81)

USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 123)

USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS

The USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS structure contains statistical data related to a pipe.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS{
    ULONG ActualAveragingInterval;
    ULONG AverageRate;
    ULONG BytesTransferred_L;
    ULONG BytesTransferred_H;
    ULONG RequestsSucceeded;
    ULONG RequestsFailed;
    ULONG reserved1;
    ULONG reserved2;
} USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS;
```

Members

ActualAveragingInterval

A time averaging algorithm is used to continuously compute the mean value of the data transfer rate. This field specifies the actual time interval, in milliseconds, that was used to calculate the average data rate returned in **AverageRate**. Normally, this value corresponds to the interval that has been configured by means of the [**IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS**](#) operation. However, if the capacity of the internal averaging filter is not sufficient for the interval set then **ActualAveragingInterval** can be less than the averaging interval that has been configured.

If **ActualAveragingInterval** is zero then the data rate computation is disabled. The **AverageRate** field of this structure is always set to zero in this case.

AverageRate

Specifies the current average data rate of the pipe, in bytes per second. The average data rate will be continuously calculated if the **ActualAveragingInterval** field of this structure is not null. If **ActualAveragingInterval** is null then the data rate computation is disabled and this field is always set to zero.

The computation of the average data rate has to be enabled and to be configured explicitly by an application. This has to be done by means of the [**IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS**](#) request.

BytesTransferred_L

Specifies the lower 32 bits of the current value of the BytesTransferred counter. The BytesTransferred counter is an unsigned 64 bit integer. It counts the total number of bytes transferred on a pipe, modulo 2^{64} .

BytesTransferred_H

Specifies the upper 32 bits of the current value of the BytesTransferred counter. The BytesTransferred counter is an unsigned 64 bit integer. It counts the total number of bytes

transferred on a pipe, modulo 2^{64} .

RequestsSucceeded

Specifies the current value of the RequestsSucceeded counter. The RequestsSucceeded counter is an unsigned 32 bit integer. It counts the total number of read or write requests that have been completed successfully on a pipe, modulo 2^{32} .

On a bulk or interrupt pipe the term request corresponds to a buffer that is submitted to perform a read or write operation. Thus, this counter will be incremented by one for each buffer that was successfully transferred.

On an isochronous pipe the term request corresponds to an isochronous data frame. Each buffer that is submitted to perform a read or write operation contains several isochronous data frames. This counter will be incremented by one for each isochronous data frame that was successfully transferred.

RequestsFailed

Specifies the current value of the RequestsFailed counter. The RequestsFailed counter is an unsigned 32 bit integer. It counts the total number of read or write requests that have been completed with an error status on a pipe, modulo 2^{32} .

On a bulk or interrupt pipe the term request corresponds to a buffer that is submitted to perform a read or write operation. Thus, this counter will be incremented by one for each buffer that is completed with an error status.

On an isochronous pipe the term request corresponds to an isochronous data frame. Each buffer that is submitted to perform a read or write operation contains several isochronous data frames. This counter will be incremented by one for each isochronous data frame that is completed with an error status.

reserved1

This member is reserved for future use.

reserved2

This member is reserved for future use.

Comments

This structure returns results of the **IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 81)

USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 121)

IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS (page 79)

USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER

The `USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER` structure provides information used to generate a specific control request.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER{
    ULONG Flags;
    UCHAR SetupPacket[8];
} USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER;
```

Members

Flags

This field contains zero or the following value.

USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK

If this flag is set then the USBIO driver does not return an error if a data packet received from the device is shorter than the maximum packet size of the endpoint. If this flag is not set then a short packet causes an error condition.

SetupPacket[8]

Specifies the SETUP packet to be issued to the device. The format of the eight byte SETUP packet is defined by the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9.

Comments

The values defined by this structure are used to generate an eight byte SETUP packet for a control endpoint. However, it is not possible to generate a control transfer for the default endpoint zero.

This structure provides the input parameters for the **IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN** and the **IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT** operation.

See Also

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN (page 83)
IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT (page 84)

USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER

The `USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER` data structure provides information about an isochronous data transfer buffer.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER{
    ULONG NumberOfPackets;
    ULONG Flags;
    ULONG StartFrame;
    ULONG ErrorCount;
} USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER;
```

Members

NumberOfPackets

Specifies the number of packets to be sent to or to be received from the device. Each packet corresponds to a USB frame or a microframe respectively. The maximum number of packets allowed in a read or write operation is limited by the registry parameter **MaxIsoPackets**. Refer to section 8.3.5 (page 273) for more information.

Flags

This field contains zero or any combination (bit-wise or) of the following values.

USBIO_SHORT_TRANSFER_OK

If this flag is set then the USBIO driver does not return an error if a data packet received from the device is shorter than the maximum packet size of the endpoint. If this flag is not set then a short packet causes an error condition.

USBIO_START_TRANSFER_ASAP

If this flag is set then the transfer will be started as soon as possible and the **StartFrame** parameter is ignored. This flag has to be used if a continuous data stream shall be sent to the isochronous endpoint of the USB device.

StartFrame

Specifies the frame number or microframe number respectively at which the transfer is to be started. The value has to be within a system-defined range relative to the current frame. Normally, this range is set to 1024 frames.

If **USBIO_START_TRANSFER_ASAP** is not specified in **Flags** then **StartFrame** has to be initialized by the caller. The caller has to specify the frame number at which the first packet of the data transfer is to be transmitted. An error occurs if the frame number is not in the valid range, relative to the current frame number.

If **USBIO_START_TRANSFER_ASAP** is specified in **Flags** then the **StartFrame** value specified by the user will be ignored. After the transfer has been started and the write request has been completed the **StartFrame** field contains the frame number assigned to the first packet of the transfer.

ErrorCount

After the isochronous read or write request has been completed by the USBIO driver this member contains the total number of errors occurred during the data transfer. In other words, **ErrorCount** specifies the number of frames that caused an error. This field can be used by an application to check if an isochronous read or write request has been completed successfully.

Comments

This data structure is a substructure within the **USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER** structure. It is the fixed sized part of the header.

See also section 5.3.2 (page 87) for more information on isochronous data transfers.

See Also

USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER (page 129)

USBIO_ISO_PACKET

The `USBIO_ISO_PACKET` structure defines the size and location of a single isochronous data packet within an isochronous data transfer buffer.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_ISO_PACKET{
    ULONG Offset;
    ULONG Length;
    ULONG Status;
} USBIO_ISO_PACKET;
```

Members

Offset

Specifies the offset, in bytes, of the isochronous packet, relative to the start of the data buffer. This parameter has to be specified by the caller for isochronous read and write operations.

Length

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the isochronous packet. This parameter has to be specified by the caller for write operations. On read operations this field is set by the USBIO driver when the read request is completed.

Status

After the isochronous read or write request is completed by the USBIO driver this field specifies the completion status of the isochronous packet.

Comments

An array of `USBIO_ISO_PACKET` structures is embedded within the `USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER` structure. One `USBIO_ISO_PACKET` structure is required for each isochronous data packet to be transferred.

See also section 5.3.2 (page 87) for more information on isochronous data transfers.

See Also

[**USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER**](#) (page 129)

USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER

The `USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER` structure defines the header that has to be placed at the beginning of an isochronous data transfer buffer.

Definition

```
typedef struct _USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER{
    USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER IsoTransfer;
    USBIO_ISO_PACKET IsoPacket[1];
} USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER;
```

Members

IsoTransfer

This is the fixed-size part of the header. See the description of the [USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER](#) data structure for more information.

IsoPacket[1]

This array of [USBIO_ISO_PACKET](#) structures has a variable length. Each element of the array corresponds to an isochronous data packet that is to be transferred either from or to the transfer buffer.

The number of valid elements in **IsoPacket** is specified by the **NumberOfPackets** member of **IsoTransfer**. See the description of the [USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER](#) data structure for more information. The maximum number of isochronous data packets per transfer buffer is defined by the registry parameter **MaxIsoPackets**. Refer to section [8.3.5](#) (page 273) for more information.

Comments

A data buffer that is passed to **ReadFile** or **WriteFile** on an isochronous pipe has to contain a valid [USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER](#) structure at offset zero. After this header the buffer contains the isochronous data which is divided into packets. The **IsoPacket** array describes the location and the size of each single isochronous data packet. The isochronous data packets have to be placed into the transfer buffer in such a way that a contiguous data area will be created. In other words, there are no gaps allowed between the isochronous data packets.

See also section [5.3.2](#) (page 87) for more information on isochronous data transfers.

See Also

[USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER](#) (page 126)

[USBIO_ISO_PACKET](#) (page 128)

5.6 Enumeration Types

USBIO_PIPE_TYPE

The USBIO_PIPE_TYPE enumeration type contains values that identify the type of a USB pipe or a USB endpoint, respectively.

Definition

```
typedef enum _USBIO_PIPE_TYPE{
    PipeTypeControl    = 0,
    PipeTypeIsochronous,
    PipeTypeBulk,
    PipeTypeInterrupt
} USBIO_PIPE_TYPE;
```

Comments

The meaning of the values is defined by the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9.

See Also

[USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 113)

USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT

The USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT enumeration type contains values that identify the recipient of a USB device request.

Definition

```
typedef enum _USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT {  
    RecipientDevice    = 0,  
    RecipientInterface,  
    RecipientEndpoint,  
    RecipientOther  
} USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT;
```

Comments

The meaning of the values is defined by the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9.

See Also

[USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST](#) (page 97)

[USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST](#) (page 99)

[USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST](#) (page 100)

[USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST](#) (page 107)

USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE

The USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE enumeration type contains values that identify the type of a USB device request.

Definition

```
typedef enum _USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE{  
    RequestTypeClass    = 1,  
    RequestTypeVendor  
} USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE;
```

Comments

The meaning of the values is defined by the Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1, Chapter 9.

The enumeration does not contain the Standard request type defined by the USB specification. This is because the USB bus driver USBD supports Class and Vendor requests only at its programming interface. Standard requests are generated internally by the USBD.

See Also

[USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST](#) (page 107)

USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE

The USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE enumeration type contains values that identify the power state of a device.

Definition

```
typedef enum _USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE{
    DevicePowerStated0    = 0,
    DevicePowerStated1,
    DevicePowerStated2,
    DevicePowerStated3
} USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE;
```

Entries

DevicePowerStated0
Device fully on, normal operation.

DevicePowerStated1
Suspend.

DevicePowerStated2
Suspend.

DevicePowerStated3
Device off.

Comments

The meaning of the values is defined by the Power Management specification.

See Also

USBIO_DEVICE_POWER (page 117)

5.7 Error Codes

USBIO_ERR_SUCCESS (0x00000000L)

The operation has been successfully completed.

USBIO_ERR_CRC (0xE0000001L)

A CRC error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_BTSTUFF (0xE0000002L)

A bit stuffing error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_DATA_TOGGLE_MISMATCH (0xE0000003L)

A DATA toggle mismatch (DATA0/DATA1 tokens) has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_STALL_PID (0xE0000004L)

A STALL PID has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_DEV_NOT_RESPONDING (0xE0000005L)

The USB device is not responding. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_PID_CHECK_FAILURE (0xE0000006L)

A PID check has failed. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_UNEXPECTED_PID (0xE0000007L)

An unexpected PID has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_DATA_OVERRUN (0xE0000008L)

A data overrun error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_DATA_UNDERRUN (0xE0000009L)

A data underrun error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_RESERVED1 (0xE000000AL)

This error code is reserved by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_RESERVED2 (0xE000000BL)

This error code is reserved by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_BUFFER_OVERRUN (0xE000000CL)

A buffer overrun has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_BUFFER_UNDERRUN (0xE000000DL)

A buffer underrun has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_NOT_ACCESSED (0xE000000FL)

A data buffer was not accessed. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver. An isochronous data buffer was scheduled too late. The specified frame number does not match the actual frame number.

USBIO_ERR_FIFO (0xE0000010L)

A FIFO error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver. The PCI bus latency was too long.

USBIO_ERR_XACT_ERROR (0xE0000011L)

A XACT error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_BABBLE_DETECTED (0xE0000012L)

A device is babbling. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver. The data transfer phase exceeds the USB frame length.

USBIO_ERR_DATA_BUFFER_ERROR (0xE0000013L)

A data buffer error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB host controller driver.

USBIO_ERR_ENDPOINT_HALTED (0xE0000030L)

The endpoint has been halted by the USB bus driver USBD. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD. A pipe will be halted by USBD when a data transmission error (CRC, bit stuff, DATA toggle) occurs. In order to re-enable a halted pipe a [**IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE**](#) request has to be issued on that pipe. See the description of [**IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE**](#) for more information.

USBIO_ERR_NO_MEMORY (0xE0000100L)

A memory allocation attempt has failed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_URB_FUNCTION (0xE0000200L)

An invalid URB function code has been passed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAMETER (0xE0000300L)

An invalid parameter has been passed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_ERROR_BUSY (0xE0000400L)

There are data transfer requests pending for the device. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_REQUEST_FAILED (0xE0000500L)

A request has failed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PIPE_HANDLE (0xE0000600L)

An invalid pipe handle has been passed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_NO_BANDWIDTH (0xE0000700L)

There is not enough bandwidth available. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INTERNAL_HC_ERROR (0xE0000800L)

An internal host controller error has been detected. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_ERROR_SHORT_TRANSFER (0xE0000900L)

A short transfer has been detected. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD. If the pipe is not configured accordingly a short packet sent by the device causes this error. Support for short packets has to be enabled explicitly. See [**IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS**](#) and [**IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST**](#) for more information.

USBIO_ERR_BAD_START_FRAME (0xE0000A00L)

A bad start frame has been specified. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_ISOCH_REQUEST_FAILED (0xE0000B00L)

An isochronous request has failed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_FRAME_CONTROL_OWNED (0xE0000C00L)

The USB frame control is currently owned. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_FRAME_CONTROL_NOT_OWNED (0xE0000D00L)

The USB frame control is currently not owned. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (0xE0000E00L)

The operation is not supported. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR (0xE0000F00L)

An invalid configuration descriptor was reported by the device. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES (0xE8001000L)

There are not enough resources available to complete the operation. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_SET_CONFIG_FAILED (0xE0002000L)

The set configuration request has failed. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_USBD_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL (0xE0003000L)

The buffer is too small. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_USBD_INTERFACE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0004000L)

The interface was not found. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PIPE_FLAGS (0xE0005000L)

Invalid pipe flags have been specified. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_USBD_TIMEOUT (0xE0006000L)

The operation has been timed out. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_GONE (0xE0007000L)

The USB device is gone. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_STATUS_NOT_MAPPED (0xE0008000L)

This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_CANCELED (0xE0010000L)

The operation has been cancelled. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD. If the data transfer requests pending on a pipe are aborted by means of **IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE** or **CancelIo** then the operations will be completed with this error code.

USBIO_ERR_ISO_NOT_ACCESSED_BY_HW (0xE0020000L)

The isochronous data buffer was not accessed by the USB host controller. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD. An isochronous data buffer was scheduled too late. The specified frame number does not match the actual frame number.

USBIO_ERR_ISO_TD_ERROR (0xE0030000L)

The USB host controller reported an error in a transfer descriptor. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_ISO_NA_LATE_USBPORT (0xE0040000L)

An isochronous data packet was submitted in time but failed to reach the USB host controller in time. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_ISO_NOT_ACCESSED_LATE (0xE0050000L)

An isochronous data packet was submitted too late. This error is reported by the USB bus driver USBD.

USBIO_ERR_FAILED (0xE0001000L)

The operation has failed. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_INBUFFER (0xE0001001L)

An invalid input buffer has been passed to an IOCTL operation. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. Make sure the input buffer matches the type and size requirements specified for the IOCTL operation.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_OUTBUFFER (0xE0001002L)

An invalid output buffer has been passed to an IOCTL operation. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. Make sure the output buffer matches the type and size requirements specified for the IOCTL operation.

USBIO_ERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY (0xE0001003L)

There is not enough system memory available to complete the operation. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_PENDING_REQUESTS (0xE0001004L)

There are read or write requests pending. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_ALREADY_CONFIGURED (0xE0001005L)

The USB device is already configured. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_NOT_CONFIGURED (0xE0001006L)

The USB device is not configured. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_OPEN_PIPES (0xE0001007L)

There are open pipes. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_ALREADY_BOUND (0xE0001008L)

Either the handle is already bound to a pipe or the specified pipe is already bound to another handle. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. See [IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#) for more information.

USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND (0xE0001009L)

The handle is not bound to a pipe. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The operation that has been failed with this error code is related to a pipe. Therefore, the handle has to be bound to a pipe before the operation can be executed. See [IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#) for more information.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_PRESENT (0xE000100AL)

The USB device has been removed from the system. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. An application should close all handles for the device. After it receives a Plug and Play notification it should perform a re-enumeration of devices.

USBIO_ERR_CONTROL_NOT_SUPPORTED (0xE000100BL)

The specified control code is not supported. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT (0xE000100CL)

The operation has been timed out. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_RECIPIENT (0xE000100DL)

An invalid recipient has been specified. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_TYPE (0xE000100EL)

Either an invalid request type has been specified or the operation is not supported by that pipe type. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_IOCTL (0xE000100FL)

An invalid IOCTL code has been specified. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_DIRECTION (0xE0001010L)

The direction of the data transfer request is not supported by that pipe. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. On IN pipes read requests are supported only. On OUT pipes write requests are supported only.

USBIO_ERR_TOO_MUCH_ISO_PACKETS (0xE0001011L)

The number of isochronous data packets specified in an isochronous read or write request exceeds the maximum number of packets supported by the USBIO driver. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. Note that the maximum number of packets allowed per isochronous data buffer can be adjusted by means of the registry parameter **MaxIsoPackets**. Refer to section [8.3.5](#) (page [273](#)) for more information.

USBIO_ERR_POOL_EMPTY (0xE0001012L)

The memory resources are exhausted. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_PIPE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0001013L)

The specified pipe was not found in the current configuration. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. Note that only endpoints that are included in the current configuration can be used to transfer data.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_ISO_PACKET (0xE0001014L)

An invalid isochronous data packet has been specified. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. An isochronous data buffer contains an isochronous data packet with invalid **Offset** and/or **Length** parameters. See [USBIO_ISO_PACKET](#) for more information.

USBIO_ERR_OUT_OF_ADDRESS_SPACE (0xE0001015L)

There are not enough system resources to complete the operation. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_INTERFACE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0001016L)

The specified interface was not found in the current configuration or in the configuration descriptor. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. Note that only interfaces that are included in the current configuration can be used.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_DEVICE_STATE (0xE0001017L)

The operation cannot be executed while the USB device is in the current state. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. It is not allowed to submit requests to the device while it is in a power down state.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAM (0xE0001018L)

An invalid parameter has been specified with an IOCTL operation. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_DEMO_EXPIRED (0xE0001019L)

The evaluation interval of the USBIO DEMO version has expired. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The USBIO DEMO version is limited in runtime. After the DEMO evaluation period has expired every operation will be completed with this error code. After the system is rebooted the USBIO DEMO driver can be used for another evaluation interval.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_POWER_STATE (0xE000101AL)

An invalid power state has been specified. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. Note that it is not allowed to switch from one power down state to another. The device has to be set to D0 before it can be set to another power down state.

USBIO_ERR_POWER_DOWN (0xE000101BL)

The device has entered a power down state. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. When the USB device leaves power state D0 and enters a power down state then all pending read and write requests will be cancelled and completed with this error status. If an application detects this error status it can re-submit the read or write requests immediately. The requests will be queued by the USBIO driver internally.

USBIO_ERR_VERSION_MISMATCH (0xE000101CL)

The API version reported by the USBIO driver does not match the expected version. This error is reported by the USBIO C++ class library USBIOLIB.

See [**IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO**](#) for more information on USBIO version numbers.

USBIO_ERR_SET_CONFIGURATION_FAILED (0xE000101DL)

The set configuration operation has failed. This error is reported by the USBIO driver.

USBIO_ERR_ADDITIONAL_EVENT_SIGNALLED (0xE000101EL)

An additional event object that has been passed to a function, was signalled.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PROCESS (0xE000101FL)

This operation is not allowed for this process.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_ACQUIRED (0xE0001020L)

The device is acquired by a different process for exclusive usage.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_OPENED (0xE0001020L)

The device is opened by a different process.

USBIO_ERR_VID_RESTRICTION (0xE0001080L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The LIGHT version does not support the Vendor ID reported by the USB device.

USBIO_ERR_ISO_RESTRICTION (0xE0001081L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The LIGHT version does not support isochronous transfers.

USBIO_ERR_BULK_RESTRICTION (0xE0001082L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The LIGHT version does not support bulk transfers.

USBIO_ERR_EP0_RESTRICTION (0xE0001083L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The LIGHT version does not support class or vendor specific SETUP requests or the data transfer length exceeds the limit.

USBIO_ERR_PIPE_RESTRICTION (0xE0001084L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The number of endpoints active in the current configuration exceeds the limit enforced by the LIGHT version.

USBIO_ERR_PIPE_SIZE_RESTRICTION (0xE0001085L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The FIFO size of an endpoint of the current configuration exceeds the limit enforced by the LIGHT version.

USBIO_ERR_CONTROL_RESTRICTION (0xE0001086L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The LIGHT version does not support control endpoints besides EP0.

USBIO_ERR_INTERRUPT_RESTRICTION (0xE0001087L)

The operation has failed due to a restriction of the USBIO LIGHT version. This error is reported by the USBIO driver. The LIGHT version does not support interrupt transfers.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND (0xE0001100L)

The specified device object does not exist. This error is reported by the USBIO C++ class library USBIOLIB. The USB device is not connected to the system or it has been removed by the user.

On Windows 98 and Windows ME this error is returned if the device is acquired for exclusive use by an other device.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_OPEN (0xE0001102L)

No device object was opened. There is no valid handle to execute the operation. This error is reported by the USBIO C++ class library USBIOLIB.

USBIO_ERR_NO_SUCH_DEVICE_INSTANCE (0xE0001104L)

The enumeration of the specified devices has failed. There are no devices of the specified type available. This error is reported by the USBIO C++ class library USBIOLIB.

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_FUNCTION_PARAM (0xE0001105L)

An invalid parameter has been passed to a function. This error is reported by the USBIO C++ class library USBIOLIB.

USBIO_ERR_LOAD_SETUP_API_FAILED (0xE0001106L)

The library *setupapi.dll* could not be loaded. This error is reported by the USBIO C++ class library USBIOLIB. The Setup API that is exported by the system-provided *setupapi.dll* is part of the Win32 API. It is available in Windows 98 and later systems.

USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_ALREADY_OPENED (0xE0001107L)

The handle in this class instance was opened by an earlier call to the function `open`. Do not call the method `open` twice or close the handle before it is opened again.

6 USBIO Class Library

6.1 Overview

The USBIO Class Library (USBIOLIB) contains classes which provide wrapper functions for all of the features supported by the USBIO programming interface. Using these classes in an application is more convenient than using the USBIO interface directly. The classes are designed to be capable of being extended. In order to meet the requirements of a particular application new classes may be derived from the existing ones. The class library is provided fully in source code.

The following figure shows the classes included in the USBIOLIB and their relations.

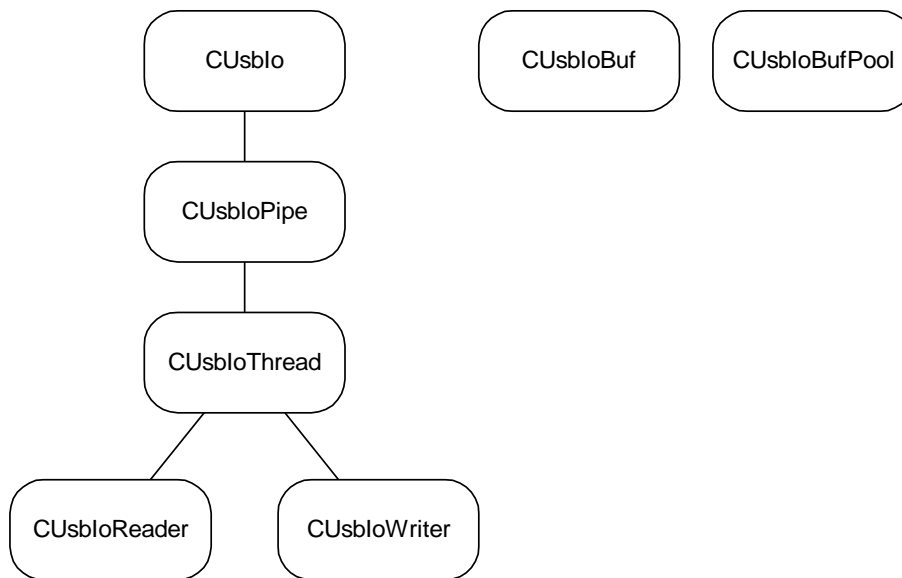


Figure 4: USBIO Class Library

6.1.1 CUsbIo Class

The class **CUsbIo** implements the basic interface to the USBIO device driver. It includes all functions that are related to a USBIO device object. Thus, by using an instance of the **CUsbIo** class all operations which do not require a pipe context can be performed.

The **CUsbIo** class supports device enumeration and an **Open()** function that is used to connect an instance of the class to a USBIO device object. The handle that represents the connection is stored inside the class instance. It is used for all subsequent requests to the device.

For each device-related operation the USBIO driver supports, a member function exists in the **CUsbIo** class. The function takes the parameters that are required for the operation and returns the status that is reported by the USBIO driver.

6.1.2 CUsbIoPipe Class

The class **CUsbIoPipe** extends the **CUsbIo** class by functions that are related to a USBIO pipe object. An instance of the **CUsbIoPipe** class is associated directly with a USBIO pipe object.

In order to establish the connection to the pipe the class provides a **Bind()** function. After a **CUsbIoPipe** instance is bound, pipe-related functions can be performed by using member functions of the class.

For each pipe-related operation that the USBIO driver supports a member function exists in the **CUsbIoPipe** class. The function takes the parameters that are required for the operation and returns the status that is reported by the USBIO driver.

The **CUsbIoPipe** class supports an asynchronous communication model for data transfers from or to the pipe. The **Read()** or **Write()** function is used to submit a data buffer to the USBIO driver. The function returns immediately indicating success if the buffer was sent to the driver successfully. There is no blocking within the **Read()** or **Write()** function. Therefore, it is possible to send multiple buffers to the pipe. The buffers are processed sequentially in the same order as they were submitted. The **WaitForCompletion()** member function is used to wait until the data transfer from or to a particular buffer is finished. This function blocks the calling thread until the USBIO driver has completed the I/O operation with the buffer.

In order to use a data buffer with the **Read()**, **Write()**, and **WaitForCompletion()** functions of the **CUsbIoPipe** class the buffer has to be described by a **CUsbIoBuf** object. The **CUsbIoBuf** helper class stores context information while the read or write operation is pending.

6.1.3 CUsbIoThread Class

The class **CUsbIoThread** provides basic functions needed to implement a worker thread that performs input or output operations on a pipe. It includes functions that are used to start and stop the worker thread.

The **CUsbIoThread** class does not implement the thread's main routine. This has to be done in a derived class. Thus, **CUsbIoThread** is an universal base class that simplifies the implementation of a worker thread that performs I/O operations on a pipe.

Note:

The worker thread created by **CUsbIoThread** is a native system thread. That means it cannot be used to call MFC (Microsoft Foundation Classes) functions. It is necessary to use **PostMessage**, **SendMessage** or some other communication mechanism to switch over to MFC-aware threads.

6.1.4 CUsbIoReader Class

The class **CUsbIoReader** extends the **CUsbIoThread** class by a specific worker thread routine that continuously sends read requests to the pipe. The thread's main routine gets buffers from an internal buffer pool and submits them to the pipe using the **Read()** function of the **CUsbIoPipe** class. After all buffers are submitted the routine waits for the first pending buffer to complete.

If a buffer is completed by the USBIO driver the virtual member function **ProcessData** is called with this buffer. Within this function the data received from the pipe should be processed. The **ProcessData** function has to be implemented by a class that is derived from **CUsbIoReader**. After that, the buffer is put back to the pool and the main loop is started from the beginning.

6.1.5 CUsbIoWriter Class

The class **CUsbIoWriter** extends the **CUsbIoThread** class by a specific worker thread routine that continuously sends write requests to the pipe. The thread's main routine gets a buffer from an internal buffer pool and calls the virtual member function **ProcessBuffer** to fill the buffer with data. After that, the buffer is sent to the pipe using the **Write()** function of the **CUsbIoPipe** class. After all buffers are submitted the routine waits for the first pending buffer to complete. If a buffer is completed by the USBIO driver the buffer is put back to the pool and the main loop is started from the beginning.

6.1.6 CUsbIoBuf Class

The helper class **CUsbIoBuf** is used as a descriptor for buffers that are processed by the class **CUsbIoPipe** and derived classes. One instance of the **CUsbIoBuf** class has to be created for each buffer. The **CUsbIoBuf** object stores context and status information that is needed to process the buffer asynchronously.

The **CUsbIoBuf** class contains a link element (Next pointer). This may be used to build a chain of linked buffer objects to hold them in a list. This way, the management of buffers can be simplified.

6.1.7 CUsbIoBufPool Class

The class **CUsbIoBufPool** is used to manage a pool of free buffers. It provides functions used to allocate an initial number of buffers, to get a buffer from the pool, and to put a buffer back to the pool.

6.2 Class Library Reference

CUsbIo class

This class implements the interface to the USBIO device driver. It contains only general device-related functions that can be executed without a pipe context. Pipe specific functions are implemented by the [CUsbIoPipe](#) class.

Member Functions

CUsbIo::CUsbIo

Standard constructor of the CUsbIo class.

Definition

```
CUsbIo ( ) ;
```

See Also

[CUsbIo::~CUsbIo](#) (page 150)

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

CUsbIo::~~CUsbIo

Destructor of the CUsbIo class.

Definition

```
virtual  
~CUsbIo ( ) ;
```

See Also

[CUsbIo::CUsbIo](#) (page 150)

[CUsbIo::Close](#) (page 155)

CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList

Creates an internal device list.

Definition

```
static HDEVINFO  
CreateDeviceList(  
    const GUID* InterfaceGuid  
);
```

*Parameter***InterfaceGuid**

This is the predefined interface GUID of the USBIO device driver or a user defined GUID which must be inserted in the USBIO.INF file.

Return Value

Returns a handle to the device list if successful, or NULL otherwise.

Comments

The function creates a windows-internal device list that contains all matching interfaces. The device interface is identified by **InterfaceGuid**. A handle for the list is returned in case of success, or NULL is returned in case of error. The device list can be iterated by means of **CUsbIo::Open**.

The device list returned must be freed by a call to **CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList**.

Note that CreateDeviceList is declared static. It can be used independently of class instances.

See Also

CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList (page 152)

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList

Destroy the internal device list.

Definition

```
static void  
DestroyDeviceList(  
    HDEVINFO DeviceList  
);
```

*Parameter***DeviceList**

A handle to a device list returned by [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#).

Comments

Use this function to destroy a device list that was generated by a call to [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#).

Note that DestroyDeviceList is declared static. It can be used independently of class instances.

See Also

[CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#) (page 151)

CUsbIo::Open

Open an USB device.

Definition

```
DWORD
Open(
    int DeviceNumber,
    HDEVINFO DeviceList,
    const GUID* InterfaceGuid
);
```

Parameters

DeviceNumber

Specifies the index number of the USB Device. The index is zero-based. Note that the association between this number and the USB device can change with each call to [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#).

DeviceList

A handle to the internal device list which was returned by the function [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#) or NULL. For more information see below.

InterfaceGuid

Points to a caller-provided variable of type GUID. The specified GUID is the predefined interface GUID of the USBIO device driver, or a user-defined GUID which has to be defined in the USBIO.INF file. This parameter will be ignored if DeviceList is set to NULL. For more information, see below.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

There are two options:

(A) DeviceList != NULL

The device list provided in DeviceList must have been built using [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#). The GUID that identifies the device interface must be provided in InterfaceGuid. **DeviceNumber** is used to iterate through the device list. It should start with zero and should be incremented after each call to **Open**. If no more instances of the interface are available then the status code **USBIO_ERR_NO_SUCH_DEVICE_INSTANCE** is returned.

Note: This is the recommended way of implementing a device enumeration.

(B) DeviceList == NULL

The parameter InterfaceGuid will be ignored. DeviceNumber will be used to build an old-style device name that starts with the string defined by **USBIO_DEVICE_NAME** (see also the comments on **USBIO_DEVICE_NAME** in UsbIo.h).

Note: This mode should be used only if compatibility to earlier versions of USBIO is required! It will work only if the creation of static device names is enabled in the USBIO.INF file. It is not recommended to use this mode.

See Also

CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList (page 151)
CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList (page 152)
CUsbIo::Close (page 155)
CUsbIo::IsOpen (page 159)
CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild (page 160)
CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion (page 161)
CUsbIo::IsLightVersion (page 162)

CUsbIo::Close

Close the USB device.

Definition

```
void  
Close( ) ;
```

Comments

This function can be called if the device is not open. It does nothing in this case.

Any thread associated with the class instance should have been stopped before this function is called. See [CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread](#).

See Also

[CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#) (page 151)

[CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList](#) (page 152)

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread](#) (page 229)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails

Get detailed information on an USB device instance.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetDeviceInstanceDetails(  
    int DeviceNumber,  
    HDEVINFO DeviceList,  
    const GUID* InterfaceGuid  
);
```

*Parameters***DeviceNumber**

Specifies the index of the USB Device. The index is zero-based. Note that the association between this number and the USB device can change with each call to [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#).

DeviceList

A handle to the internal device list which was returned by the function [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#).

InterfaceGuid

Points to a caller-provided variable of type GUID. The specified GUID is the predefined interface GUID of the USBIO device driver, or a user-defined GUID which has to be defined in the USBIO.INF file.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function retrieves detailed information on a device instance that has been enumerated by means of [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#). That information includes the device path name that has to be passed to CreateFile in order to open the device instance. The device path name is returned by [CUsbIo::GetDevicePathName](#).

This function is used internally by the implementation of [CUsbIo::Open](#). Normally, it is not called directly by an application.

See Also

[CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#) (page 151)

[CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList](#) (page 152)

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

CUsbIo::GetDevicePathName (page 158)

CUsbIo::GetDevicePathName

Returns the path name that is required to open the device instance.

Definition

```
const char*
GetDevicePathName( );
```

Return Value

Returns a pointer to the path name associated with this device instance, or NULL. The returned pointer is temporarily valid only and should not be stored for later use. It becomes invalid if the device is closed. If no device is opened, the return value is NULL.

The return value is always NULL if the device was opened using case (A) described in the comments of the **CUsbIo::Open** function.

Comments

This function retrieves the device path name of the device instance. The path name is available after a device enumeration has been performed by a call to **CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList** and **CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails** or **CUsbIo::Open** has been called.

This function is used internally by the implementation of **CUsbIo::Open**. Normally, it is not called directly by an application.

See Also

CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList (page 151)
CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList (page 152)
CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails (page 156)
CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::Close (page 155)

CUsbIo::IsOpen

Returns TRUE if the class instance is attached to a device.

Definition

```
BOOL  
IsOpen( ) ;
```

Return Value

Returns TRUE when a device was opened by a successful call to [Open](#). Returns FALSE if no device is opened.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIo::Close](#) (page 155)

CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild

Returns TRUE if a checked build (debug version) of the USBIO driver was detected.

Definition

```
BOOL  
IsCheckedBuild( ) ;
```

Return Value

Returns TRUE if the checked build of the USBIO driver is running, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)
[CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion](#) (page 161)
[CUsbIo::IsLightVersion](#) (page 162)

CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion

Returns TRUE if the Demo version of the USBIO driver was detected.

Definition

```
BOOL  
IsDemoVersion( ) ;
```

Return Value

Returns TRUE if the Demo version of the USBIO driver is running, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)
[CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild](#) (page 160)
[CUsbIo::IsLightVersion](#) (page 162)

CUsbIo::IsLightVersion

Returns TRUE if the Light version of the USBIO driver was detected.

Definition

```
BOOL  
IsLightVersion( ) ;
```

Return Value

Returns TRUE if the Light version of the USBIO driver is running, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)
[CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild](#) (page 160)
[CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion](#) (page 161)

CUsbIo::IsOperatingAtHighSpeed

Returns TRUE if the USB 2.0 device is operating at high speed (480 Mbit/s).

Definition

```
BOOL  
IsOperatingAtHighSpeed( ) ;
```

Return Value

Returns TRUE if the USB device is operating at high speed, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

If this function returns TRUE then the USB device operates in high speed mode. The USB 2.0 device is connected to a hub port that is high speed capable.

Note that this function does not indicate whether a device is capable of high speed operation, but rather whether it is in fact operating at high speed.

This function calls [CUsbIo::GetDeviceInfo](#) to get the requested information.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIo::GetDeviceInfo](#) (page 167)

CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo

Get information on the USBIO device driver.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetDriverInfo(  
    USBIO_DRIVER_INFO* DriverInfo  
);
```

*Parameter***DriverInfo**

Pointer to a caller-provided variable. The structure returns the API version, the driver version, and the build number.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::Close (page 155)

USBIO_DRIVER_INFO (page 95)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO (page 67)

CUsbIo::AcquireDevice

Acquire the device for exclusive use.

Definition

```
DWORD  
AcquireDevice( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::Close (page 155)
CUsbIo::ReleaseDevice (page 166)

CUsbIo::ReleaseDevice

Acquire the device for exclusive use.

Definition

```
DWORD  
ReleaseDevice( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::Close (page 155)
CUsbIo::AcquireDevice (page 165)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceInfo

Get information about the USB device.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetDeviceInfo(  
    USBIO_DEVICE_INFO* DeviceInfo  
);
```

*Parameter***DeviceInfo**

Pointer to a caller-provided variable. The structure returns information on the USB device. This includes a flag that indicates whether the device operates in high speed mode or not.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function can be used to detect if the device operates in high speed mode.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

USBIO_DEVICE_INFO (page 94)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO (page 66)

CUsbIo::GetBandwidthInfo

Get information on the current USB bandwidth consumption.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetBandwidthInfo(  
    USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO* BandwidthInfo  
);
```

*Parameter***BandwidthInfo**

Pointer to a caller-provided variable. The structure returns information on the bandwidth that is available on the USB.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The function enables an application to check the bandwidth that is available on the USB. Depending on this information an application can select an appropriate device configuration, if desired.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO (page 93)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO (page 65)

CUsbIo::GetDescriptor

Get a descriptor from the device.

Definition

```
DWORD
GetDescriptor(
    void* Buffer,
    DWORD& ByteCount,
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient,
    UCHAR DescriptorType,
    UCHAR DescriptorIndex = 0,
    USHORT LanguageId = 0
);
```

Parameters

Buffer

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer. The buffer receives the requested descriptor.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of valid bytes returned in the buffer.

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the request. Possible values are enumerated by [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

DescriptorType

The type of the descriptor to request. Values are defined by the USB specification, chapter 9.

DescriptorIndex

The index of the descriptor to request. Set to zero if an index is not used for the descriptor type, e.g. for a device descriptor.

LanguageId

The language ID of the descriptor to request. Used for string descriptors only. Set to zero if not used.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

If the size of the provided buffer is less than the total size of the requested descriptor then only the specified number of bytes from the beginning of the descriptor is returned.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor (page 171)

CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor (page 172)

CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor (page 174)

CUsbIo::SetDescriptor (page 176)

USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT (page 131)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR (page 42)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor

Get the device descriptor from the device.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetDeviceDescriptor(  
    USB_DEVICE_DESCRIPTOR* Desc  
);
```

*Parameter***Desc**

Pointer to a caller-provided variable that receives the requested descriptor.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

GetDeviceDescriptor calls [CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#) to retrieve the descriptor. Thus, for detailed information see also [CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#).

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#) (page 169)

[CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor](#) (page 172)

[CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor](#) (page 174)

CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor

Get a configuration descriptor from the device.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetConfigurationDescriptor(  
    USB_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR* Desc,  
    DWORD& ByteCount,  
    UCHAR Index = 0  
);
```

*Parameters***Desc**

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer that receives the requested descriptor. Note that the size of the configuration descriptor depends on the USB device. See also the comments below.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Desc**. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of valid bytes returned in the buffer.

Index

The index of the descriptor to request.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

GetConfigurationDescriptor calls [CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#) to retrieve the descriptor. Thus, for detailed information see also [CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#).

If the total size of the configuration descriptor is not known it can be retrieved in a two step process. With a first call to this function the fixed part of the descriptor which is defined by **USB_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR** is retrieved. The total size of the descriptor is indicated by the *wTotalLength* field of the structure. In a second step a buffer of the required size can be allocated and the complete descriptor can be retrieved with another call to this function.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::GetDescriptor (page 169)
CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor (page 171)
CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor (page 174)

CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor

Get a string descriptor from the device.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetStringDescriptor(  
    USB_STRING_DESCRIPTOR* Desc ,  
    DWORD& ByteCount ,  
    UCHAR Index = 0 ,  
    UCHAR LanguageId = 0  
);
```

Parameters

Desc

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer that receives the requested descriptor. Note that according to the USB specification the maximum size of a string descriptor is 256 bytes.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Desc**. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of valid bytes returned in the buffer.

Index

The index of the descriptor to request. Set to 0 to retrieve a list of supported language IDs. See also the comments below.

LanguageId

The language ID of the string descriptor to request.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

GetStringDescriptor calls [CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#) to retrieve the descriptor. Thus, for detailed information see also [CUsbIo::GetDescriptor](#).

If this function is called with **Index** set to 0 the device returns a list of language IDs it supports. An application can select the correct language ID and use it in subsequent calls to this function.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::GetDescriptor (page 169)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor (page 171)

CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor (page 172)

CUsbIo::SetDescriptor

Set a descriptor of the device.

Definition

```
DWORD
SetDescriptor(
    const void* Buffer,
    DWORD& ByteCount,
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient,
    UCHAR DescriptorType,
    UCHAR DescriptorIndex = 0,
    USHORT LanguageId = 0
);
```

*Parameters***Buffer**

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer. The buffer contains the descriptor data to be set.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the descriptor pointed to by **Buffer**. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of bytes transferred.

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the request. Possible values are enumerated by [**USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT**](#).

DescriptorType

The type of the descriptor to set. Values are defined by the USB specification, chapter 9.

DescriptorIndex

The index of the descriptor to set.

LanguageId

The language ID of the descriptor to set. Used for string descriptors only. Set to zero if not used.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

Note that most devices do not support the set descriptor request.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::GetDescriptor (page 169)
CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor (page 171)
CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor (page 172)
CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor (page 174)
USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT (page 131)
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR (page 43)

CUsbIo::SetFeature

Send a set feature request to the USB device.

Definition

```
DWORD
SetFeature(
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient,
    USHORT FeatureSelector,
    USHORT Index = 0
);
```

*Parameters***Recipient**

Specifies the recipient of the request. Possible values are enumerated by [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

FeatureSelector

Specifies the feature selector value for the request. The values are defined by the recipient. Refer to the USB specification, chapter 9 for more information.

Index

Specifies the index value for the set feature request. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the USB specification, chapter 9 for more information.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)
[CUsbIo::ClearFeature](#) (page 179)
[CUsbIo::GetStatus](#) (page 180)
[USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#) (page 131)
[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE](#) (page 44)

CUsbIo::ClearFeature

Send a clear feature request to the USB device.

Definition

```
DWORD
ClearFeature(
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient,
    USHORT FeatureSelector,
    USHORT Index    =0
);
```

Parameters

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the request. Possible values are enumerated by [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

FeatureSelector

Specifies the feature selector value for the request. The values are defined by the recipient. Refer to the USB specification, chapter 9 for more information.

Index

Specifies the index value for the clear feature request. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the USB specification, chapter 9 for more information.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)
[CUsbIo::SetFeature](#) (page 178)
[CUsbIo::GetStatus](#) (page 180)
[USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#) (page 131)
[IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE](#) (page 45)

CUsbIo::GetStatus

Send a get status request to the USB device.

Definition

```
DWORD
GetStatus(
    USHORT& StatusValue,
    USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT Recipient,
    USHORT Index = 0
);
```

*Parameters***StatusValue**

If the function call is successful this variable returns the 16-bit value that is returned by the recipient in response to the get status request. The interpretation of the value is specific to the recipient. Refer to the USB specification, chapter 9 for more information.

Recipient

Specifies the recipient of the request. Possible values are enumerated by [USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#).

Index

Specifies the index value for the get status request. The values are defined by the device. Refer to the USB specification, chapter 9 for more information.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)
[CUsbIo::SetFeature](#) (page 178)
[CUsbIo::ClearFeature](#) (page 179)
[USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT](#) (page 131)
[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) (page 46)

CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest

Sends a class or vendor specific request with a data phase in device to host (IN) direction.

Definition

```
DWORD
ClassOrVendorInRequest(
    void* Buffer,
    DWORD& ByteCount,
    const USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST* Request
);
```

Parameters

Buffer

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer. The buffer receives the data transferred in the IN data phase.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of valid bytes returned in the buffer.

Request

Pointer to a caller-provided variable that defines the request to be generated.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest (page 182)

USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST (page 107)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST (page 54)

CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest

Sends a class or vendor specific request with a data phase in host to device (OUT) direction.

Definition

```
DWORD
ClassOrVendorOutRequest(
    const void* Buffer,
    DWORD& ByteCount,
    const USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST* Request
);
```

*Parameters***Buffer**

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer that contains the data to be transferred in the OUT data phase.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. This is the number of bytes to be transferred in the data phase. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of bytes transferred.

Request

Pointer to a caller-provided variable that defines the request to be generated.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest (page 181)

USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST (page 107)

IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST (page 55)

CUsbIo::SetConfiguration

Set the device to the configured state.

Definition

```
DWORD  
SetConfiguration(  
    const USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION* Conf  
);
```

Parameter

Conf

Points to a caller-provided structure that defines the configuration to be set.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device has to be configured before any data transfer from or to its endpoints can take place. Only those endpoints that are included in the configuration will be activated and can be subsequently used for data transfers.

If the device provides more than one interface all interfaces must be configured in one call to this function.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::UnconfigureDevice (page 184)
CUsbIo::GetConfiguration (page 185)
CUsbIo::SetInterface (page 187)
USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 106)
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION (page 50)

CUsbIo::UnconfigureDevice

Set the device to the unconfigured state.

Definition

```
DWORD  
UnconfigureDevice( );
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::SetConfiguration (page 183)
CUsbIo::GetConfiguration (page 185)
IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE (page 52)

CUsbIo::GetConfiguration

This function returns the current configuration value.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetConfiguration(  
    UCHAR& ConfigurationValue  
);
```

Parameter

ConfigurationValue

If the function call is successful this variable returns the current configuration value. A value of 0 means the USB device is not configured.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The configuration value returned by this function corresponds to the *bConfiguration* field of the active configuration descriptor. Note that the configuration value does not necessarily correspond to the index of the configuration descriptor.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::SetConfiguration (page 183)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION (page 47)

CUsbIo::GetConfigurationInfo

Get information on the interfaces and endpoints available in the current configuration.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetConfigurationInfo(  
    USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO* Info  
);
```

*Parameter***Info**

Points to a caller-provided variable that receives the configuration information.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The information returned is retrieved from the USBIO driver's internal data base. This function does not cause any action on the USB.

The device must have been opened and configured before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) operation. See also the description of

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIo::SetConfiguration](#) (page 183)

[USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 115)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 59)

CUsbIo::SetInterface

This function changes the alternate setting of an interface.

Definition

```
DWORD  
SetInterface(  
    const USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING* Setting  
);
```

Parameter

Setting

Points to a caller-provided structure that specifies the interface and the alternate settings to be set.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened and configured before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::SetConfiguration (page 183)
CUsbIo::GetInterface (page 188)
USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING (page 105)
IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE (page 53)

CUsbIo::GetInterface

This function returns the active alternate setting of an interface.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetInterface(  
    UCHAR& AlternateSetting,  
    USHORT Interface = 0  
);
```

*Parameters***AlternateSetting**

If the function call is successful this variable returns the current alternate setting of the interface.

Interface

Specifies the index of the interface to be queried.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened and configured before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::SetConfiguration (page 183)
CUsbIo::SetInterface (page 187)
IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE (page 48)

CUsbIo::StoreConfigurationDescriptor

Store a configuration descriptor in the USBIO device driver.

This function is obsolete (see below).

Definition

```
DWORD  
StoreConfigurationDescriptor(  
    const USB_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR* Desc  
);
```

Parameter

Desc

Pointer to the configuration descriptor to be stored.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

Store a configuration descriptor in the USBIO device driver and use it for the next set configuration request. This allows to work around problems with certain devices.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

Note: This function is obsolete and should not be used. It was introduced in earlier versions of USBIO to work around problems caused by the Windows USB driver stack. The stack was not able to handle some types of isochronous endpoint descriptors correctly. In the meantime these problems are fixed and therefore the `StoreConfigurationDescriptor` work-around is obsolete.

This function is a wrapper for the [**IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR**](#) operation. See also the description of [**IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR**](#) for further information.

See Also

[**CUsbIo::Open**](#) (page 153)

[**CUsbIo::SetConfiguration**](#) (page 183)

[**IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR**](#) (page 49)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceParameters

Query device-related parameters from the USBIO device driver.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetDeviceParameters(  
    USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS* DevParam  
);
```

*Parameter***DevParam**

Points to a caller-provided variable that receives the current parameter settings.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIo::SetDeviceParameters](#) (page 191)

[USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 109)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 57)

CUsbIo::SetDeviceParameters

Set device-related parameters in the USBIO device driver.

Definition

```
DWORD
SetDeviceParameters(
    const USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS* DevParam
);
```

*Parameter***DevParam**

Points to a caller-provided variable that specifies the parameters to be set.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

Default device parameters are stored in the registry during USBIO driver installation. The default value can be changed in the INF file or in the registry. Device parameters set by means of this function are valid until the device is removed from the PC or the PC is booted. A modification during run-time does not change the default in the registry.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::GetDeviceParameters (page 190)

USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 109)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS (page 58)

CUsbIo::ResetDevice

Force an USB reset.

Definition

```
DWORD  
ResetDevice( );
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function causes an USB reset to be issued on the hub port the device is connected to. This will abort all pending read and write requests and unbind all pipes. The device will be set to the unconfigured state.

Note: The device must be in the configured state when this function is called. ResetDevice does not work when the system-provided USB multi-interface driver is used (see also *problems.txt* in the USBIO package).

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::SetConfiguration (page 183)
CUsbIo::UnconfigureDevice (page 184)
CUsbIo::CyclePort (page 193)
CUsbIoPipe::Bind (page 202)
CUsbIoPipe::Unbind (page 204)
CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe (page 214)
IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE (page 60)

CUsbIo::CyclePort

Simulates a device disconnect/connect cycle.

Definition

```
DWORD  
CyclePort ( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function causes a device disconnect/connect cycle and an unload/load cycle for the USBIO device driver as well.

Note: CyclePort does not work on multi-interface devices (see also *problems.txt* in the USBIO package).

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::ResetDevice (page 192)

IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT (page 69)

CUsbIo::GetCurrentFrameNumber

Get the current USB frame number from the host controller.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetCurrentFrameNumber (  
    DWORD& FrameNumber  
);
```

*Parameter***FrameNumber**

If the function call is successful this variable returns the current frame number.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The returned frame number is a 32 bit value. The 11 least significant bits correspond to the frame number in the USB frame token.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER (page 62)

CUsbIo::GetDevicePowerState

Returns the current device power state.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetDevicePowerState(  
    USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE& DevicePowerState  
);
```

*Parameter***DevicePowerState**

If the function call is successful this variable returns the current device power state.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIo::Open](#) (page 153)

[CUsbIo::SetDevicePowerState](#) (page 196)

[USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 133)

[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 64)

CUsbIo::SetDevicePowerState

Set the device power state.

Definition

```
DWORD  
SetDevicePowerState(  
    USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE DevicePowerState  
);
```

*Parameter***DevicePowerState**

Specifies the device power state to be set.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

In order to set the device to suspend it must be in the configured state.

When the device is set to suspend all pending read and write requests will be returned by the USBIO driver with an error status of **USBIO_ERR_POWER_DOWN**. An application can ignore this error status and submit the requests to the driver again.

The device must have been opened before this function is called.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIo::Open (page 153)

CUsbIo::GetDevicePowerState (page 195)

USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE (page 133)

IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE (page 63)

CUsbIo::CancelIo

Cancels outstanding I/O requests issued by the calling thread.

Definition

```
BOOL  
CancelIo( ) ;
```

Return Value

If the function succeeds the return value is TRUE, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

CancelIo cancels all outstanding I/O requests that were issued by the calling thread on the class instance. Requests issued on the instance by other threads are not cancelled.

This function is a wrapper for the Win32 function *CancelIo*. For a description of this function refer to the Win32 Platform SDK documentation.

CUsbIo::IoctlSync

Call a driver I/O control function and wait for its completion.

Definition

```
DWORD
IoctlSync(
    DWORD IoctlCode,
    const void* InBuffer,
    DWORD InBufferSize,
    void* OutBuffer,
    DWORD OutBufferSize,
    DWORD* BytesReturned
);
```

*Parameters***IoctlCode**

The IOCTL code that identifies the driver function.

InBuffer

Pointer to the input buffer. The input buffer contains information to be passed to the driver. Set to NULL if no input buffer is needed.

InBufferSize

Size, in bytes, of the input buffer. Set to 0 if no input buffer is needed.

OutBuffer

Pointer to the output buffer. The output buffer receives information returned from the driver. Set to NULL if no output buffer is needed.

OutBufferSize

Size, in bytes, of the output buffer. Set to 0 if no output buffer is needed.

BytesReturned

Points to a caller-provided variable that, on a successful call, will be set to the number of bytes returned in the output buffer. Set to NULL if this information is not needed.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

IoctlSync is a generic support function that can be used to submit any IOCTL request to the USBIO device driver.

This function is used internally to handle the asynchronous USBIO API.

CUsbIo::ErrorText

Translate an USBIO error code to a description string.

Definition

```
static char*
ErrorText(
    char* StringBuffer,
    DWORD StringBufferSize,
    DWORD ErrorCode
);
```

*Parameters***StringBuffer**

A caller-provided string buffer that receives the text. The function returns a null-terminated ASCII string.

StringBufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **StringBuffer**.

ErrorCode

The error code to be translated.

Return Value

The function returns the **StringBuffer** pointer.

Comments

This function supports private USBIO error codes only. These codes start with a prefix of 0xE. The function cannot be used to translate general Windows error codes.

Note that **ErrorText** is declared static. It can be used independently of class instances.

Data Members

HANDLE **FileHandle**

This protected member contains the handle for the USBIO device object. The value is NULL if no open handle exists.

OVERLAPPED **Overlapped**

This protected member provides an OVERLAPPED data structure that is required to perform asynchronous (overlapped) I/O operations by means of the Win32 function **DeviceIoControl**. The Overlapped member is used by **CUsbIo::IoctlSync**.

CRITICAL_SECTION **CritSect**

This protected member provides a Win32 Critical Section object that is used to synchronize IOCTL operations on **FileHandle**. Synchronization is required because there is only one OVERLAPPED data structure per CUsbIo object, see also **CUsbIo::Overlapped**.

The CUsbIo object is thread-safe. It can be accessed by multiple threads simultaneously.

BOOL **CheckedBuildDetected**

This protected member provides a flag. It is set to TRUE if a checked (debug) build of the USBIO driver has been detected, FALSE otherwise. The flag is initialized by the **CUsbIo::Open** function. See also **CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo** for more information.

The state of this flag can be queried by means of the function **CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild**.

BOOL **DemoVersionDetected**

This protected member provides a flag. It is set to TRUE if a DEMO version of the USBIO driver has been detected, FALSE otherwise. The flag is initialized by the **CUsbIo::Open** function. See also **CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo** for more information.

The state of this flag can be queried by means of the function **CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion**.

BOOL **LightVersionDetected**

This protected member provides a flag. It is set to TRUE if a LIGHT version of the USBIO driver has been detected, FALSE otherwise. The flag is initialized by the **CUsbIo::Open** function. See also **CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo** for more information.

The state of this flag can be queried by means of the function **CUsbIo::IsLightVersion**.

SP_DEVICE_INTERFACE_DETAIL_DATA* **mDevDetail**

This private member contains information on the device instance opened by the CUsbIo object. It is used by the CUsbIo implementation internally.

static CSetupApiDll **smSetupApi**

This protected member is used to manage the library *setupapi.dll*. The **CSetupApiDll** class provides functions to load the system-provided library *setupapi.dll* explicitly at run-time.

CUsbIoPipe class

This class implements the interface to an USB pipe that is exported by the USBIO device driver. It provides all pipe-related functions that can be executed on a file handle that is bound to an USB endpoint. Particularly, it provides the functions needed for a data transfer from or to an endpoint.

Note that this class is derived from **CUsbIo**. All general and device-related functions can be executed on an instance of CUsbIoPipe as well.

Member Functions

CUsbIoPipe::CUsbIoPipe

Standard constructor of the CUsbIoPipe class.

Definition

```
CUsbIoPipe ( ) ;
```

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::~~CUsbIoPipe](#) (page 201)

CUsbIoPipe::~~CUsbIoPipe

Destructor of the CUsbIoPipe class.

Definition

```
~CUsbIoPipe ( ) ;
```

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::CUsbIoPipe](#) (page 201)

CUsbIoPipe::Bind

Bind the object to an endpoint of the USB device.

Definition

```
DWORD
Bind(
    int DeviceNumber,
    UCHAR EndpointAddress,
    HDEVINFO DeviceList = NULL,
    const GUID* InterfaceGuid = NULL
);
```

*Parameters***DeviceNumber**

Specifies the index number of the USB Device. The index is zero-based. Note that the association between this number and the USB device can change with each call to [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#). For more details see also [CUsbIo::Open](#).

Note that this parameter is ignored if the device has already been opened. See the comments below.

EndpointAddress

Specifies the address of the endpoint to bind the object to. The endpoint address is specified as reported in the corresponding endpoint descriptor.

The endpoint address includes the direction flag at bit position 7 (MSB).

Bit 7 = 0: OUT endpoint

Bit 7 = 1: IN endpoint

For example, an IN endpoint with endpoint number 1 has the endpoint address 0x81.

DeviceList

A handle to the internal device list which was returned by the function [CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList](#) or NULL. For more details see also [CUsbIo::Open](#).

Note that this parameter is ignored if the device has already been opened. See the comments below.

InterfaceGuid

Points to a caller-provided variable of type GUID, or can be set to NULL. The provided GUID is the predefined interface GUID of the USBIO device driver, or a user-defined GUID which has to be defined in the USBIO.INF file. For more details see also [CUsbIo::Open](#).

Note that this parameter is ignored if the device has already been opened. See the comments below.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

If an USB device has not already been opened this function calls **CUsbIo::Open** to attach the object to a device. It passes the parameters **DeviceNumber**, **DeviceList**, and **InterfaceGuid** unmodified to **CUsbIo::Open**. Thus, a device and an endpoint can be attached to the object in one step.

Alternatively, an application can attach a device first by means of **CUsbIo::Open** (derived from **CUsbIo**, and then in a second step attach an endpoint by means of **Bind**. The parameters **DeviceNumber**, **DeviceList**, and **InterfaceGuid** will be ignored in this case.

The device must be set to the configured state before an endpoint can be bound, see **CUsbIo::SetConfiguration**. Only endpoints that are included in the active configuration can be bound by this function and subsequently used for a data transfer.

Note that an instance of the CUsbIoPipe class can be bound to exactly one endpoint only. Consequently, one instance has to be created for each endpoint to be activated.

This function is a wrapper for the **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE** operation. See also the description of **IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE** for further information.

See Also

CUsbIoPipe::Unbind (page 204)
CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList (page 151)
CUsbIo::Open (page 153)
CUsbIo::Close (page 155)
CUsbIo::SetConfiguration (page 183)
IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE (page 73)

CUsbIoPipe::Unbind

Delete the association between the object and an endpoint.

Definition

```
DWORD  
Unbind( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

A call to this function causes all pending read and write requests to be aborted.

After this function was called the object can be bound to another endpoint. However, it is recommended to use a separate object for each endpoint. See also the comments on [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

It is not an error to call Unbind when no endpoint is currently bound. The function does nothing in this case.

Note that closing the device either by means of [CUsbIo::Close](#) or by destructing the object will also cause an unbind. Thus, normally there is no need to call Unbind explicitly.

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

[CUsbIo::Close](#) (page 155)

[IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE](#) (page 74)

CUsbIoPipe::Read

Submit a read request on the pipe.

Definition

```
BOOL  
Read(  
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf  
);
```

Parameter

Buf

Pointer to a buffer descriptor the read buffer is attached to. The buffer descriptor has to be prepared by the caller. See the comments below.

Return Value

Returns TRUE if the request was successfully submitted, FALSE otherwise. If FALSE is returned then the **Status** member of **Buf** contains an error code.

Comments

The function submits the buffer memory that is attached to **Buf** to the USBIO device driver. The caller has to prepare the buffer descriptor pointed to by **Buf**. Particularly, the **NumberOfBytesToTransfer** member has to be set to the number of bytes to read.

The call returns immediately (asynchronous behavior). After the function succeeded the read operation is pending. It will be completed later on by the USBIO driver when data is received from the device. To determine when the operation has been completed the function **CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion** should be called.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see **CUsbIoPipe::Bind**.

See Also

CUsbIoPipe::Bind (page 202)
CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync (page 209)
CUsbIoPipe::Write (page 206)
CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion (page 207)
CUsbIoBuf (page 243)

CUsbIoPipe::Write

Submit a write request on the pipe.

Definition

```
BOOL  
Write(  
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf  
);
```

*Parameter***Buf**

Pointer to a buffer descriptor the write buffer is attached to. The buffer descriptor has to be prepared by the caller. See the comments below.

Return Value

Returns TRUE if the request was successfully submitted, FALSE otherwise. If FALSE is returned then the **Status** member of **Buf** contains an error code.

Comments

The function submits the buffer memory that is attached to **Buf** to the USBIO device driver. The buffer contains the data to be written. The caller has to prepare the buffer descriptor pointed to by **Buf**. Particularly, the **NumberOfBytesToTransfer** member has to be set to the number of bytes to write.

The call returns immediately (asynchronous behavior). After the function succeeded the write operation is pending. It will be completed later on by the USBIO driver when data has been sent to the device. To determine when the operation has been completed the function **CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion** should be called.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see **CUsbIoPipe::Bind**.

See Also

CUsbIoPipe::Bind (page 202)
CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync (page 211)
CUsbIoPipe::Read (page 205)
CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion (page 207)
CUsbIoBuf (page 243)

CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion

Wait for completion of a pending read or write operation.

Definition

```
DWORD  
WaitForCompletion(  
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf,  
    DWORD Timeout = INFINITE,  
    HANDLE AdditionalEvent = NULL  
);
```

Parameters

Buf

Pointer to the buffer descriptor that has been submitted by means of **CUsbIoPipe::Read** or **CUsbIoPipe::Write**.

Timeout

Specifies a timeout interval, in milliseconds. The function returns with a status code of **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT** if the interval elapses and the read or write operation is still pending.

When INFINITE is specified then the interval never elapses. The function does not return until the read or write operation is finished.

When 0 is specified the function returns immediately. It returns **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT** if the operation is still pending or **USBIO_ERR_SUCCESS** if the operation is completed.

AdditionalEvent

Optionally, specifies an additional event object which has been created by the caller. If this parameter is not NULL then the specified event object will be included in the wait operation which this function performs internally to wait for completion of the buffer. The function returns immediately with a status code of **USBIO_ERR_ADDITIONAL_EVENT_SIGNALLED** if the additional event object gets signalled, regardless of the status of the buffer.

This parameter is set to NULL if the caller does not require an additional event object to be included in the wait operation.

Return Value

The function returns **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT** if the timeout interval elapsed. It returns **USBIO_ERR_ADDITIONAL_EVENT_SIGNALLED** if an additional event object has been specified and this event was signalled before the buffer completed or the timeout interval elapsed.

If the read or write operation has been finished the return value is the final completion status of the operation. Note that the **Status** member of **Buf** will also be set to the final

completion status in this case. The completion status is 0 if the read or write operation has been successfully finished, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

After a buffer was submitted to the USBIO device driver by means of **CUsbIoPipe::Read** or **CUsbIoPipe::Write** this function is used to wait for the completion of the data transfer. Note that `WaitForCompletion` can be called regardless of the return status of the **CUsbIoPipe::Read** or **CUsbIoPipe::Write** function. It returns always the correct status of the buffer.

Optionally, a timeout interval for the wait operation may be specified. When the interval elapses before the read or write operation is finished the function returns with a special status of **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT**. The data transfer operation is still pending in this case. `WaitForCompletion` should be called again until the operation is finished.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see **CUsbIoPipe::Bind**.

See Also

CUsbIoPipe::Bind (page 202)

CUsbIoPipe::Read (page 205)

CUsbIoPipe::Write (page 206)

CUsbIoBuf (page 243)

CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync

Submit a read request on the pipe and wait for its completion.

Definition

```
DWORD
ReadSync(
    void* Buffer,
    DWORD& ByteCount,
    DWORD Timeout = INFINITE
);
```

Parameters

Buffer

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer. The buffer receives the data transferred from the device.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. After the function succeeds **ByteCount** contains the number of bytes successfully read.

Timeout

Specifies a timeout interval, in milliseconds. If the interval elapses and the read operation is not yet finished the function aborts the operation and returns with **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT**.

When INFINITE is specified then the interval never elapses. The function does not return until the read operation is finished.

Return Value

The function returns **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT** if the timeout interval elapsed and the read operation was aborted. If the read operation has been finished the return value is the completion status of the operation which is 0 for success, or an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The function transfers data from the endpoint attached to the object to the specified buffer. The function does not return to the caller until the data transfer has been finished or aborted due to a timeout. It behaves in a synchronous manner.

Optionally, a timeout interval for the synchronous read operation may be specified. When the interval elapses before the operation is finished the function aborts the operation and returns with a special status of **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT**. In this case, it is not possible to determine the number of bytes already transferred. The library calls the Win32 API

function **CancelIo()** to abort the current request. This function aborts all pending requests submitted with this thread and this handle. After a timeout error occurred **CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe** should be called.

Note that there is some overhead involved when this function is used. This is due to a temporary Win32 Event object that is created and destroyed internally.

Note: Using synchronous read requests does make sense in rare cases only and can lead to unpredictable results. It is recommended to handle read operations asynchronously by means of **CUsbIoPipe::Read** and **CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion**.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see **CUsbIoPipe::Bind**.

See Also

CUsbIoPipe::Bind (page 202)

CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync (page 211)

CUsbIoPipe::Read (page 205)

CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion (page 207)

CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe (page 213)

CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync

Submit a write request on the pipe and wait for its completion.

Definition

```
DWORD  
WriteSync(  
    void* Buffer ,  
    DWORD& ByteCount ,  
    DWORD Timeout = INFINITE  
);
```

Parameters

Buffer

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer that contains the data to be transferred to the device.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. This is the number of bytes to be transferred to the device. After the function succeeds **ByteCount** contains the number of bytes successfully written.

Timeout

Specifies a timeout interval, in milliseconds. If the interval elapses and the write operation is not yet finished the function aborts the operation and returns with **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT**.

When INFINITE is specified then the interval never elapses. The function does not return until the write operation is finished.

Return Value

The function returns **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT** if the timeout interval elapsed and the write operation was aborted. If the write operation has been finished the return value is the completion status of the operation which is 0 for success, or an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The function transfers data from the specified buffer to the endpoint attached to the object. The function does not return to the caller until the data transfer has been finished or aborted due to a timeout. It behaves in a synchronous manner.

Optionally, a timeout interval for the synchronous write operation may be specified. When the interval elapses before the operation is finished the function aborts the operation and returns with a special status of **USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT**. In this case, it is not possible to determine the number of bytes already transferred. The library calls the Win32 API function **CancelIo()** to abort the current request. This function aborts all

pending requests submitted with this thread and this handle. After a timeout error occurred **CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe** should be called.

Note that there is some overhead involved when this function is used. This is due to a temporary Win32 Event object that is created and destroyed internally.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see **CUsbIoPipe::Bind**.

See Also

CUsbIoPipe::Bind (page 202)

CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync (page 209)

CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe (page 213)

CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe

Reset pipe.

Definition

```
DWORD  
ResetPipe( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function resets the software state of a pipe in the USB driver stack. Besides, on a bulk or interrupt pipe a CLEAR_FEATURE Endpoint Stall request will be generated on the USB. This should reset the endpoint state in the device as well.

This function has to be used after an error condition occurred on the pipe and the pipe was halted by the USB drivers.

It is recommended to call ResetPipe every time a data transfer is initialized on the pipe.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

[CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe](#) (page 214)

[IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE](#) (page 75)

CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe

Cancel all pending read and write requests on this pipe.

Definition

```
DWORD  
AbortPipe( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function is used to abort pending I/O operations on the pipe. All pending buffers will be returned to the application with an error status. Note that it is not possible to determine the number of bytes already transferred from or to an aborted buffer.

After a call to this function and before the data transfer is restarted the state of the pipe should be reset by means of [CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe](#). See also the comments on [CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe](#).

Note that it will take some milliseconds to cancel all buffers. Therefore, AbortPipe should not be called periodically.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)
[CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe](#) (page 213)
[IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) (page 76)

CUsbIoPipe::GetPipeParameters

Query pipe-related parameters from the USBIO device driver.

Definition

```
DWORD  
GetPipeParameters(  
    USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS* PipeParameters  
);
```

*Parameter***PipeParameters**

Points to a caller-provided variable that receives the current parameter settings.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)
[CUsbIoPipe::SetPipeParameters](#) (page 216)
[USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 119)
[IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 77)

CUsbIoPipe::SetPipeParameters

Set pipe-related parameters in the USBIO device driver.

Definition

```
DWORD  
SetPipeParameters(  
    const USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS* PipeParameters  
);
```

*Parameter***PipeParameters**

Points to a caller-provided variable that specifies the parameters to be set.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

[CUsbIoPipe::GetPipeParameters](#) (page 215)

[USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 119)

[IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 78)

CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn

Generates a control transfer (SETUP token) on the pipe with a data phase in device to host (IN) direction.

Definition

```
DWORD  
PipeControlTransferIn(  
    void* Buffer ,  
    DWORD& ByteCount ,  
    const USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER* ControlTransfer  
);
```

*Parameters***Buffer**

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer. The buffer receives the data transferred in the IN data phase.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of valid bytes returned in the buffer.

ControlTransfer

Pointer to a caller-provided variable that defines the request to be generated.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function is used to send a SETUP token to a Control type endpoint.

Note: This function cannot be used to send a SETUP request to the default endpoint 0.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the

[**IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN**](#) operation. See also the description of [**IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN**](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut (page 219)

USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER (page 125)

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN (page 83)

CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut

Generates a control transfer (SETUP token) on the pipe with a data phase in host to device (OUT) direction.

Definition

```
DWORD  
PipeControlTransferOut(  
    const void* Buffer,  
    DWORD& ByteCount,  
    const USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER* ControlTransfer  
);
```

Parameters

Buffer

Pointer to a caller-provided buffer that contains the data to be transferred in the OUT data phase.

ByteCount

When the function is called **ByteCount** specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by **Buffer**. This is the number of bytes to be transferred in the data phase. After the function successfully returned **ByteCount** contains the number of bytes transferred.

ControlTransfer

Pointer to a caller-provided variable that defines the request to be generated.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

This function is used to send a SETUP token to a Control type endpoint.

Note: This function cannot be used to send a SETUP request to the default endpoint 0.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn (page 217)

USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER (page 125)

IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT (page 84)

CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics

Enables or disables a statistical analysis of the data transfer on the pipe.

Definition

```
DWORD
SetupPipeStatistics(
    ULONG AveragingInterval
);
```

Parameter

AveragingInterval

Specifies the time interval, in milliseconds, that is used to calculate the average data rate of the pipe. A time averaging algorithm is used to continuously compute the mean value of the data transfer rate.

If **AveragingInterval** is set to zero then the average data rate computation is disabled. This is the default state. An application should only enable the average data rate computation if it is needed. This will save resources (kernel memory and CPU cycles).

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The USBIO driver is able to analyse the data transfer (outgoing or incoming) on a pipe and to calculate the average data rate on that pipe. A time averaging algorithm is used to continuously compute the mean value of the data transfer rate. In order to save resources (kernel memory and CPU cycles) the average data rate computation is disabled by default. It has to be enabled and to be configured by means of this function before it is available to an application. See also [CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics](#) and [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for more information on pipe statistics.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

[CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics](#) (page 222)

[IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 79)

CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics

Returns statistical data related to the pipe.

Definition

```
DWORD
QueryPipeStatistics(
    USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS* PipeStatistics,
    ULONG Flags = 0
);
```

*Parameters***PipeStatistics**

Points to a caller-provided variable that receives the statistical data.

Flags

This parameter is set to zero or any combination (bit-wise or) of the following values.

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_BYTES_TRANSFERRED

If this flag is specified then the BytesTransferred counter will be reset to zero after its current value has been captured. The BytesTransferred counter is an unsigned 64 bit integer. It counts the total number of bytes transferred on a pipe, modulo 2^{64} .

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_REQUESTS_SUCCEEDED

If this flag is specified then the RequestsSucceeded counter will be reset to zero after its current value has been captured. The RequestsSucceeded counter is an unsigned 32 bit integer. It counts the total number of read or write requests that have been completed successfully on a pipe, modulo 2^{32} .

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_REQUESTS_FAILED

If this flag is specified then the RequestsFailed counter will be reset to zero after its current value has been captured. The RequestsFailed counter is an unsigned 32 bit integer. It counts the total number of read or write requests that have been completed with an error status on a pipe, modulo 2^{32} .

USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_ALL_COUNTERS

This value combines the three flags described above. If USBIO_QPS_FLAG_RESET_ALL_COUNTERS is specified then all three counters BytesTransferred, RequestsSucceeded, and RequestsFailed will be reset to zero after their current values have been captured.

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The USBIO driver internally maintains some statistical data per pipe object. This function allows an application to query the actual values of the various statistics counters.

Optionally, individual counters can be reset to zero after queried. See also [CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics](#) and [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for more information on pipe statistics.

The USBIO driver is able to analyse the data transfer (outgoing or incoming) on a pipe and to calculate the average data rate on that pipe. In order to save resources (kernel memory and CPU cycles) this feature is disabled by default. It has to be enabled and to be configured by means of the function [CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics](#) before it is available to an application. Thus, before an application starts to (periodically) query the value of **AverageRate** that is included in the data structure

[USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) it has to enable the continuous computation of this value by a call to [CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics](#). The other statistical counters contained in the [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) structure will be updated by default and do not need to be enabled explicitly.

Note that the statistical data is maintained for each pipe object separately.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

This function is a wrapper for the [IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) operation. See also the description of [IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for further information.

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)

[CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics](#) (page 221)

[USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 123)

[IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 81)

CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipeStatistics

Reset the statistics counters of the pipe.

Definition

```
DWORD  
ResetPipeStatistics( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns 0 if successful, an USBIO error code otherwise.

Comments

The USBIO driver internally maintains some statistical data per pipe object. This function resets the counters BytesTransferred, RequestsSucceeded, and RequestsFailed to zero. See also [CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics](#) and [USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) for more information on pipe statistics.

Note that this function calls [CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics](#) to reset the counters.

The device must have been opened and the object must have been bound to an endpoint before this function is called, see [CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#).

See Also

[CUsbIoPipe::Bind](#) (page 202)
[CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics](#) (page 221)
[CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics](#) (page 222)
[USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS](#) (page 123)

CUsbIoThread class

This class provides a basic implementation of a worker-thread that is used to continuously perform I/O operations. CUsbIoThread is a base class for the **CUsbIoReader** and **CUsbIoWriter** worker-thread implementations.

The CUsbIoThread class contains pure virtual functions. Consequently, it is not possible to create an instance of the class.

Note that CUsbIoThread is derived from **CUsbIoPipe**. Thus, all USBIO functions can be executed on an instance of CUsbIoThread.

Member Functions

CUsbIoThread::CUsbIoThread

Constructs a CUsbIoThread object.

Definition

```
CUsbIoThread( ) ;
```

See Also

CUsbIoThread::~CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoThread::~CUsbIoThread

Destructor of the CUsbIoThread class.

Definition

```
virtual  
~CUsbIoThread( ) ;
```

Comments

The internal worker-thread must have been terminated when the object's destructor is called. That means **CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread** must be called before the object is destroyed.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread (page 229)

CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers

Allocate the internal buffer pool.

Definition

```
BOOL  
AllocateBuffers(  
    DWORD SizeOfBuffer,  
    DWORD NumberOfBuffers  
);
```

*Parameters***SizeOfBuffer**

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffers to be allocated internally.

NumberOfBuffers

Specifies the number of buffers to be allocated internally.

Return Value

Returns TRUE in case of success, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The function initializes an internal **CUsbIoBufPool** object. For more information on the parameters and the behavior of the function refer to the description of **CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate**.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::FreeBuffers (page 227)

CUsbIoBufPool (page 251)

CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate (page 253)

CUsbIoThread::FreeBuffers

Free the internal buffer pool.

Definition

```
void  
FreeBuffers( ) ;
```

Comments

The function frees the buffers allocated by the internal **CUsbIoBufPool** object. For more information on the behavior of the function refer to the description of **CUsbIoBufPool::Free**.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers (page 226)
CUsbIoBufPool (page 251)
CUsbIoBufPool::Free (page 254)

CUsbIoThread::StartThread

Start the internal worker-thread.

Definition

```
BOOL  
StartThread(  
    DWORD MaxIoErrorCount = 3  
);
```

*Parameter***MaxIoErrorCount**

Specifies the maximum number of I/O errors caused by read or write operations that will be tolerated by the thread. The thread will terminate itself when the specified limit is reached.

Return Value

Returns TRUE in case of success, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The internal worker-thread will be created. Possibly, it starts its execution before this function returns.

The error limit specified in **MaxIoErrorCount** prevents an end-less loop in the worker-thread that can occur when the device permanently fails data transfer requests.

The internal buffer pool must have been initialized by means of [CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers](#) before this function is called.

Note: The internal worker-thread is a native system thread. That means it cannot call MFC (Microsoft Foundation Classes) functions. It is necessary to use *PostMessage*, *SendMessage* or some other communication mechanism to switch over to MFC-aware threads.

See Also

[CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers](#) (page 226)

[CUsbIoThread::ThreadRoutine](#) (page 234)

[CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread](#) (page 229)

CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread

Terminate the internal worker-thread.

Definition

```
BOOL  
ShutdownThread( ) ;
```

Return Value

Returns TRUE in case of success, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The function sets the member variable **TerminateFlag** to TRUE. Then it calls the virtual member function **CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread**. The implementation of **CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread** should cause the worker-thread to resume from a wait function and to terminate itself.

ShutdownThread blocks until the worker-thread has been terminated by the operating system.

It is not an error to call ShutdownThread when the internal thread is not started. The function does nothing in this case.

Note: This function has to be called before the CUsbIoThread object is destroyed. In other words, the worker-thread must have been terminated when the object's destructor **CUsbIoThread::~CUsbIoThread** is called.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::StartThread (page 228)

CUsbIoThread::~CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread (page 235)

CUsbIoThread::ProcessData

This handler is called by the worker-thread to process data that has been received from the device.

Definition

```
virtual void  
ProcessData(  
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf  
);
```

*Parameter***Buf**

Pointer to a buffer descriptor the buffer is attached to.

Comments

This handler function is used by the **CUsbIoReader** implementation of the worker-thread. It is called when data has been successfully received on the pipe. Note that the function is called in the context of the worker-thread.

There is a default implementation of **ProcessData** that is just empty. **ProcessData** should be overloaded by a derived class to implement a specific functionality.

An implementation of **ProcessData** should examine the fields **CUsbIoBuf::Status** and **CUsbIoBuf::BytesTransferred** to determine if there are valid data bytes in the buffer.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::StartThread (page 228)

CUsbIoThread::ProcessBuffer (page 231)

CUsbIoReader (page 237)

CUsbIoBuf (page 243)

CUsbIoBuf::Status (page 249)

CUsbIoBuf::BytesTransferred (page 249)

CUsbIoThread::ProcessBuffer

This handler is called by the worker-thread if a buffer must be filled with data before it will be submitted on the pipe.

Definition

```
virtual void  
ProcessBuffer(  
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf  
);
```

Parameter

Buf

Pointer to a buffer descriptor the buffer is attached to.

Comments

This handler function is used by the **CUsbIoWriter** implementation of the worker-thread. It is called when a buffer has to be filled before it will be submitted on the pipe. Note that the function is called in the context of the worker-thread.

There is a default implementation of ProcessBuffer. It fills the buffer with zeroes and sets the **CUsbIoBuf::NumberOfBytesToTransfer** member of **Buf** to the buffer's size. ProcessBuffer should be overloaded by a derived class to implement a specific functionality.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::StartThread (page 228)

CUsbIoThread::ProcessData (page 230)

CUsbIoWriter (page 240)

CUsbIoBuf (page 243)

CUsbIoBuf::NumberOfBytesToTransfer (page 249)

CUsbIoThread::BufErrorHandler

This handler is called by the worker-thread when a read or write operation has been completed with an error status.

Definition

```
virtual void
BufErrorHandler(
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf
);
```

*Parameter***Buf**

Pointer to a buffer descriptor the failed buffer is attached to.

Comments

This handler function is used by both the **CUsbIoReader** and **CUsbIoWriter** implementation of the worker-thread. It is called when a read or write request failed. Note that the function is called in the context of the worker-thread.

There is a default implementation of BufErrorHandler that is just empty. BufErrorHandler should be overloaded by a derived class to implement a specific error handling.

An implementation of BufErrorHandler should examine the field **CUsbIoBuf::Status** to determine the reason for failing the read or write request.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::StartThread (page 228)
CUsbIoThread::ProcessData (page 230)
CUsbIoThread::ProcessBuffer (page 231)
CUsbIoReader (page 237)
CUsbIoWriter (page 240)
CUsbIoBuf (page 243)
CUsbIoBuf::Status (page 249)

CUsbIoThread::OnThreadExit

This notification handler is called by the worker-thread before the thread terminates itself.

Definition

```
virtual void  
OnThreadExit( ) ;
```

Comments

The function is called in the context of the worker-thread.

There is a default implementation of OnThreadExit that is just empty. OnThreadExit can be overloaded by a derived class to implement a specific behavior.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::StartThread (page 228)

CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread (page 229)

CUsbIoThread::ThreadRoutine

The main routine that is executed by the worker-thread.

Definition

```
virtual void  
ThreadRoutine( ) = 0;
```

Comments

The function is declared pure virtual. Consequently, it must be implemented by a derived class.

The derived classes **CUsbIoReader** and **CUsbIoWriter** implement this function.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::StartThread (page 228)
CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread (page 229)
CUsbIoReader (page 237)
CUsbIoWriter (page 240)

CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread

This routine is called by **CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread** to terminate the internal worker-thread.

Definition

```
virtual void  
TerminateThread( ) = 0;
```

Comments

The function is declared pure virtual. Consequently, it must be implemented by a derived class. Note that TerminateThread is called in the context of **CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread**.

The derived classes **CUsbIoReader** and **CUsbIoWriter** implement this function.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread (page 229)

CUsbIoReader (page 237)

CUsbIoWriter (page 240)

Data Members

HANDLE **mThreadHandle**

Specifies the priority of the thread. This member has to be set before the worker thread is started to use a specific priority. Otherwise, the default value of `THREAD_PRIORITY_HIGHEST` will be used.

CUsbIoBufPool **BufPool**

The internal buffer pool, see [CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers](#) and [CUsbIoThread::FreeBuffers](#).

HANDLE **ThreadHandle**

The handle that identifies the worker-thread. The value is NULL if the worker-thread is not started.

unsigned int **ThreadID**

The thread ID assigned by the operating system for the worker-thread.

volatile BOOL **TerminateFlag**

This flag will be set to TRUE by [CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread](#) to indicate that the worker-thread shall terminate itself.

DWORD **MaxErrorCount**

An error limit for the worker-thread's main loop. For a description see [CUsbIoThread::StartThread](#).

CUsbIoBuf* **FirstPending**

Used by [CUsbIoReader](#) and [CUsbIoWriter](#) to implement a list of currently pending buffers.

CUsbIoBuf* **LastPending**

Used by [CUsbIoReader](#) and [CUsbIoWriter](#) to implement a list of currently pending buffers.

CUsbIoReader class

This class implements a worker-thread that continuously reads a data stream from a pipe.

Note that this class is derived from [CUsbIoThread](#) which provides the basic handling of the internal worker-thread.

Member Functions

CUsbIoReader::CUsbIoReader

Constructs a CUsbIoReader object.

Definition

```
CUsbIoReader ( ) ;
```

See Also

[CUsbIoReader::~~CUsbIoReader](#) (page 237)

CUsbIoReader::~~CUsbIoReader

Destructor of the CUsbIoReader class.

Definition

```
virtual  
~CUsbIoReader ( ) ;
```

Comments

The internal worker-thread must have been terminated when the object's destructor is called. That means [CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread](#) must be called before the object is destroyed.

See Also

[CUsbIoReader::CUsbIoReader](#) (page 237)

[CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread](#) (page 229)

CUsbIoReader::ThreadRoutine

The main routine that is executed by the worker-thread.

Definition

```
virtual void  
ThreadRoutine( ) ;
```

Comments

This function implements the main loop of the worker-thread. It submits all buffers from the internal buffer pool to the driver and waits for the completion of the first buffer.

ThreadRoutine can be overloaded by a derived class to implement a different behavior.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::ThreadRoutine (page 234)

CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoReader::TerminateThread (page 239)

CUsbIoReader::TerminateThread

This routine is called by **CUsbIoThread** when the worker-thread shall be terminated.

Definition

```
virtual void  
TerminateThread( ) ;
```

Comments

The implementation of this function calls **CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe**. This will cancel all pending read operations and cause the worker-thread to resume.

TerminateThread can be overloaded by a derived class to implement a different behavior.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread (page 235)

CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoReader::ThreadRoutine (page 238)

CUsbIoWriter class

This class implements a worker-thread that continuously writes a data stream to a pipe.

Note that this class is derived from **CUsbIoThread** which provides the basic handling of the internal worker-thread.

Member Functions**CUsbIoWriter::CUsbIoWriter**

Constructs a CUsbIoWriter object.

Definition

```
CUsbIoWriter( ) ;
```

See Also

CUsbIoWriter::~~CUsbIoWriter (page 240)

CUsbIoWriter::~~CUsbIoWriter

Destructor of the CUsbIoWriter class.

Definition

```
virtual  
~CUsbIoWriter( ) ;
```

Comments

The internal worker-thread must have been terminated when the object's destructor is called. That means **CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread** must be called before the object is destroyed.

See Also

CUsbIoWriter::CUsbIoWriter (page 240)

CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread (page 229)

CUsbIoWriter::ThreadRoutine

The main routine that is executed by the worker-thread.

Definition

```
virtual void  
ThreadRoutine( ) ;
```

Comments

This function implements the main loop of the worker-thread. It submits all buffers from the internal buffer pool to the driver and waits for the completion of the first buffer.

ThreadRoutine can be overloaded by a derived class to implement a different behavior.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::ThreadRoutine (page 234)

CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoWriter::TerminateThread (page 242)

CUsbIoWriter::TerminateThread

This routine is called by **CUsbIoThread** when the worker-thread shall be terminated.

Definition

```
virtual void  
TerminateThread( ) ;
```

Comments

The implementation of this function calls **CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe**. This will cancel all pending read operations and cause the worker-thread to resume.

TerminateThread can be overloaded by a derived class to implement a different behavior.

See Also

CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread (page 235)

CUsbIoThread (page 225)

CUsbIoWriter::ThreadRoutine (page 241)

CUsbIoBuf class

This class is used as a buffer descriptor of buffers used for read and write operations.

Member Functions**CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf**

Construct a CUsbIoBuf object.

Definition

```
CUsbIoBuf ( ) ;
```

Comments

This is the default constructor. It creates an empty descriptor. No buffer is attached.

See Also

CUsbIoBuf::~CUsbIoBuf (page 246)

CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf

Construct a CUsbIoBuf object and attach an existing buffer.

Definition

```
CUsbIoBuf (  
    void* Buffer ,  
    DWORD BufferSize  
);
```

*Parameters***Buffer**

Points to a caller-provided buffer to be attached to the descriptor object.

BufferSize

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer to be attached to the descriptor object.

See Also

[**CUsbIoBuf::~~CUsbIoBuf**](#) (page 246)

CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf

Construct a CUsbIoBuf object and allocate a buffer internally.

Definition

```
CUsbIoBuf (  
    DWORD BufferSize  
);
```

*Parameter***BufferSize**

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffer to be allocated and attached to the descriptor object.

Comments

This constructor allocates a buffer of the specified size and attaches it to the descriptor object. The buffer will be automatically freed by the destructor of this class.

See Also

CUsbIoBuf::~CUsbIoBuf (page 246)

CUsbIoBuf::~~CUsbIoBuf

Destructor for a CUsbIoBuf object.

Definition

```
~CUsbIoBuf ( ) ;
```

Comments

The destructor frees a buffer that was allocated by a constructor. A buffer that has been attached after construction will not be freed.

See Also

CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf (page 243)

CUsbIoBuf::Buffer

Get buffer pointer.

Definition

```
void*  
Buffer( );
```

Return Value

The function returns a pointer to the first byte of the buffer that is attached to the descriptor object. The return value is NULL if no buffer is attached.

See Also

[CUsbIoBuf::Size](#) (page 248)

CUsbIoBuf::Size

Get buffer size, in bytes.

Definition

```
DWORD  
Size( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns the size, in bytes, of the buffer that is attached to the descriptor object. The return value is 0 if no buffer is attached.

See Also

CUsbIoBuf::Buffer (page 247)

Data Members

DWORD **NumberOfBytesToTransfer**

This public member specifies the number of bytes to be transferred to or from the buffer in a subsequent read or write operation.

Note that this member has to be set before the read or write operation is initiated by means of **CUsbIoPipe::Read** or **CUsbIoPipe::Write**.

DWORD **BytesTransferred**

This public member indicates the number of bytes successfully transferred to or from the buffer during a read or write operation.

Note that this member will be set after a read or write operation is completed.

DWORD **Status**

This public member indicates the completion status of a read or write operation.

Note that this member will be set after a read or write operation is completed.

CUsbIoBuf* **Next**

This public member allows to build a chain of buffer descriptor objects. It is used by **CUsbIoBufPool**, **CUsbIoReader**, and **CUsbIoWriter** to manage buffer lists.

BOOL **OperationFinished**

This public member is used as a flag. If it is set to TRUE then it indicates that the data transfer operation is finished altogether. Read or write processing will be terminated by **CUsbIoReader** or **CUsbIoWriter**.

DWORD **Context**

This public member is a general purpose field. It will never be touched by any class in the USBIO class library. Thus, it can be used by an application to store a context value that it associates with the buffer object.

void* **BufferMem**

This protected member contains the address of the memory block that is attached to the CUsbIoBuf object. A value of NULL indicates that no memory block is attached.

DWORD **BufferSize**

This protected member contains the size, in bytes, of the memory block that is attached to the CUsbIoBuf object. The value is zero if no memory block is attached.

OVERLAPPED **Overlapped**

This protected member provides the OVERLAPPED data structure that is required to perform asynchronous (overlapped) I/O operations by means of the Win32 functions **ReadFile**, **WriteFile**, and **DeviceIoControl**. One instance of the OVERLAPPED structure is required per I/O buffer. The data structure stores context information while the asynchronous I/O operation is in progress. Most important, it provides a Win32 Event object that signals the completion of the asynchronous operation.

This member is used by **CUsbIoReader** and **CUsbIoWriter** to perform I/O operations.

BOOL **BufferMemAllocated**

This protected member provides a flag. It is set to TRUE if the memory block that is attached to the CUsbIoBuf object was allocated by a constructor of the class. The memory block has to be freed by the destructor in this case. The flag is set to FALSE if the memory block that is attached to the CUsbIoBuf object was provided by the user.

CUsbIoBufPool class

This class implements a pool of CUsbIoBuf objects. It is used by **CUsbIoReader** and **CUsbIoWriter** to simplify management of buffer pools.

Member Functions

CUsbIoBufPool::CUsbIoBufPool

Construct a CUsbIoBufPool object.

Definition

```
CUsbIoBufPool( ) ;
```

Comments

This is the default constructor. It creates an empty pool.

See Also

[**CUsbIoBufPool::~~CUsbIoBufPool**](#) (page 252)

CUsbIoBufPool::~~CUsbIoBufPool

Destructor for a CUsbIoBufPool object.

Definition

```
~CUsbIoBufPool( ) ;
```

Comments

The destructor frees all **CUsbIoBuf** objects allocated by the pool.

See Also

[**CUsbIoBufPool::CUsbIoBufPool**](#) (page 252)

CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate

Allocate all elements of the buffer pool.

Definition

```
BOOL  
Allocate(  
    DWORD SizeOfBuffer,  
    DWORD NumberOfBuffers  
);
```

*Parameters***SizeOfBuffer**

Specifies the size, in bytes, of the buffers to be allocated internally.

NumberOfBuffers

Specifies the number of buffers to be allocated internally.

Return Value

Returns TRUE in case of success, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The function allocates the required number of buffer descriptors (**CUsbIoBuf** objects). Then it allocates the specified amount of buffer memory. The total number of bytes to allocate is calculated as follows.

$$TotalSize = NumberOfBuffers * SizeOfBuffer$$

In a last step the buffers are attached to the descriptors and stored in an internal list.

The function fails by returning FALSE when an internal pool is already allocated.

CUsbIoBufPool::Free has to be called before a new pool can be allocated.

See Also

CUsbIoBufPool::Free (page 254)

CUsbIoBufPool::Free

Free all elements of the buffer pool.

Definition

```
void  
Free( ) ;
```

Comments

The function frees all buffer descriptors and all the buffer memory allocated by a call to **CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate**. The pool is empty after this call.

A call to Free on an empty pool is allowed. The function does nothing in this case.

Note that after a call to Free, another pool can be allocated by means of **CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate**.

See Also

CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate (page 253)

CUsbIoBufPool::Get

Get a buffer from the pool.

Definition

```
CUsbIoBuf*  
Get( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns a pointer to the buffer descriptor removed from the pool, or NULL if the pool is exhausted.

Comments

The function removes a buffer from the pool and returns a pointer to the associated descriptor. The caller is responsible for releasing the buffer, see [CUsbIoBufPool::Put](#).

See Also

[CUsbIoBufPool::Put](#) (page 256)

[CUsbIoBufPool::CurrentCount](#) (page 257)

CUsbIoBufPool::Put

Put a buffer back to the pool.

Definition

```
void  
Put(  
    CUsbIoBuf* Buf  
);
```

*Parameter***Buf**

Pointer to the buffer descriptor that was returned by **CUsbIoBufPool::Get**.

Comments

This function is called to release a buffer that was returned by **CUsbIoBufPool::Get**.

See Also

CUsbIoBufPool::Get (page 255)

CUsbIoBufPool::CurrentCount (page 257)

CUsbIoBufPool::CurrentCount

Get current number of buffers in the pool.

Definition

```
long  
CurrentCount( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns the current number of buffers stored in the pool.

See Also

CUsbIoBufPool::Get (page 255)

CUsbIoBufPool::Put (page 256)

Data Members

CRITICAL_SECTION **CritSect**

This protected member provides a Win32 Critical Section object that is used to synchronize access to the members of the class. Thus, the CUsbIoBufPool object is thread-safe. It can be accessed by multiple threads simultaneously.

CUsbIoBuf* **Head**

This protected member points to the first buffer object that is available in the pool. The buffer pool is managed by means of a single-linked list. This member points to the element at the head of the list. The **CUsbIoBuf** objects are linked by means of their **Next** member. The list is terminated by a **Next** pointer that is set to NULL.

Head is set to NULL if the buffer list is empty.

long **Count**

This protected member contains the number of buffers that are currently linked to the pool.

CUsbIoBuf* **BufArray**

This protected member points to the array of CUsbIoBuf objects that are allocated by the pool internally.

char* **BufferMemory**

This protected member points to the buffer memory block that is allocated by the pool internally.

CSetupApiDll class

This class provides a mean to load the system-provided *setupapi.dll* explicitly. The method is also called Run-Time Dynamic Linking.

The library *setupapi.dll* is part of the Win32 API and provides functions for managing Plug&Play devices. It is supported by Windows 98 and later systems. The file *setupapi.dll* is not available on older systems like Windows 95 and Windows NT. Therefore, if an application is implicitly linked to *setupapi.dll* then it will not load on older systems. In order to avoid such kind of problems the DLL should be loaded explicitly at run-time. The CSetupApiDll class provides the appropriate implementation.

Member Functions

CSetupApiDll::CSetupApiDll

Construct a CSetupApiDll object.

Definition

```
CSetupApiDll ( ) ;
```

Comments

This is the default constructor. It initializes the object.

CSetupApiDll::~CSetupApiDll

Destructor for a CSetupApiDll object.

Definition

```
~CSetupApiDll ( ) ;
```

Comments

The destructor frees the *setupapi.dll* library if loaded.

CSetupApiDll::Load

Load the system-provided library *setupapi.dll*.

Definition

```
BOOL  
Load( ) ;
```

Return Value

The function returns TRUE if successful, FALSE otherwise.

Comments

The function loads the DLL and if this was successful then it initializes all function pointers to contain the address of the appropriate function.

The function can safely be called repeatedly. It returns TRUE if the *setupapi.dll* is already loaded.

See Also

CSetupApiDll::Release (page 261)

CSetupApiDll::Release

Release the *setupapi.dll* library.

Definition

```
void  
Release( ) ;
```

Comments

The function frees the DLL and invalidates all function pointers.

The function can safely be called if the DLL is not loaded. It does not perform any operation in this case.

See Also

[CSetupApiDll::Load](#) (page 260)

7 USBIO Demo Application

The USBIO Demo Application demonstrates the usage of the USBIO driver interface. It is based on the USBIO Class Library which covers the native API calls. The Application is designed to handle one USB device that can contain multiple pipes. It is possible to run multiple instances of the application, each connected to another USB device.

The USBIO Demo Application is a dialog based MFC (Microsoft Foundation Classes) application. The main dialog contains a button that allows to open an output window. All output data and all error messages are directed to this window. The button "Clear Output Window" discards the actual contents of the window.

The main dialog contains several dialog pages which allow to access the device-related driver operations. From the dialog page "Pipes" a separate dialog can be started for each configured pipe. The pipe dialogs are non-modal. More than one pipe dialog can be opened at a given point in time.

7.1 Dialog Pages for Device Operations

7.1.1 Device

This page allows to scan for available devices. The application enumerates the USBIO device objects currently available. It opens each device object and queries the USB device descriptor. The USB devices currently attached to USBIO are listed in the output window. A device can be opened and closed, and the device parameters can be requested or set.

Related driver interfaces:

- **CreateFile();**
- **CloseHandle();**
- **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** (page 57)
- **IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS** (page 58)

7.1.2 Descriptors

This page allows to query standard descriptors from the device. The index of the configuration and the string descriptors can be specified. The descriptors are dumped to the output window. Some descriptors are interpreted. Unknown descriptors are presented as HEX dump.

Related driver interfaces:

- **IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR** (page 42)

7.1.3 Configuration

This page is used to set a configuration, to unconfigure the device, or to request the current configuration.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR](#) (page 42)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 47)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR](#) (page 49)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION](#) (page 50)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE](#) (page 52)

7.1.4 Interface

By using this page the alternate setting of a configured interface can be changed.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE](#) (page 53)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE](#) (page 48)

7.1.5 Pipes

This page allows to show all configured endpoints and interfaces by using the button "Get Configuration Info". A new non-modal dialog for each configured pipe can be opened as well.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO](#) (page 59)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE](#) (page 73)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE](#) (page 74)

7.1.6 Class or Vendor Request

By using this page a class or vendor specific request can be send to the USB device.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST](#) (page 54)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST](#) (page 55)

7.1.7 Feature

This page can be used to send set or clear feature requests.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE](#) (page 44)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE](#) (page 45)

7.1.8 Other

This page allows to query the device state, to reset the USB device, to get the current frame number, and to query or set the device power state.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS](#) (page 46)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE](#) (page 60)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER](#) (page 62)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 63)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE](#) (page 64)

7.2 Dialog Pages for Pipe Operations

Three different types of pipe dialogs can be selected. For IN pipes a **Read from pipe to file** dialog and a **Read from pipe to output window** dialog can be activated. For OUT pipes a **Write from file to pipe** dialog can be started. The pipe dialog **Read from pipe to output window** cannot be used with isochronous pipes.

When a new pipe dialog is opened it is bound to a pipe. If the dialog is closed the pipe is unbound. Each pipe dialog contains pipe-related and transfer-related functions. The first three dialog pages are the same in all pipe dialogs. The last page has a special meaning.

7.2.1 Pipe

By using this page it is possible to access the functions Reset Pipe, Abort Pipe, Get Pipe Parameters, and Set Pipe Parameters.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE](#) (page 75)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) (page 76)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 77)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#) (page 78)

7.2.2 Buffers

By means of this page the size and the number of buffers can be selected. For Interrupt and Bulk pipes the "Size of Buffer" field is relevant. For Isochronous pipes the "Number of Packets" field is relevant and the required buffer size is calculated internally. In the "Max Error Count" field a maximum number of errors can be specified. When this number is exceeded, the data transfer is aborted. Each successful transfer resets the error counter to zero.

7.2.3 Control

This dialog page allows to access user-defined control pipes. It cannot be used to access the default pipe (endpoint zero) of a USB device.

Related driver interfaces:

- [IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN](#) (page 83)
- [IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT](#) (page 84)

7.2.4 Read from Pipe to Output Window

This dialog page allows to read data from an Interrupt or Bulk pipe and to dump it to the output window. For large amounts of data the transfer may be slowed down because of the overhead involved with printing to the output window. The printing of the data can be enabled/disabled by the switch **Print to Output Window**.

Related driver interfaces:

- `ReadFile()`;
- [IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) (page 76)

7.2.5 Read from Pipe to File

This dialog page allows to read data from the pipe to a file. This transfer type can be used for Isochronous pipes as well. The synchronization type of the Isochronous pipe has to be "asynchronous". The application does not support data rate feedback.

Related driver interfaces:

- `ReadFile()`;
- [IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) (page 76)

7.2.6 Write from File to Pipe

This dialog page allows to write data from a file to the pipe. This transfer type can be used for Isochronous pipes as well. The synchronization type of the isochronous pipe has to be "asynchronous". The application does not support data rate feedback.

Related driver interfaces:

- `WriteFile()`;
- [IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE](#) (page 76)

8 Driver Customization

8.1 Customization Overview

The USBIO device driver supports various features that enable you to create a customized device driver package to be shipped with an end product. Customization includes:

- Modification of the file name of the driver executable,
- Modification of text strings shown at the Windows user interface,
- Definition of a unique software interface identifier,
- Adaptation of driver behavior for a specific device.

Note that the driver package which is shipped to end users should always be customized. This is required in order to avoid potential conflicts with other products of other vendors that are also using the USBIO device driver. Please consider the following example scenario: An end user buys product A which includes the USBIO device driver version 2.00. The user installs this driver on his machine. At a later point in time the user buys another product of another vendor which is called B. Product B includes the USBIO device driver version 2.30. When the user installs the device driver for Product B on his machine then a conflict will occur because another version of the driver is already installed on that machine.

There are several problems that may result from this conflict situation:

- **Driver version conflict**

We assume that during driver installation any existing device driver will be removed if the existing driver has an older version than the driver to be installed. If the existing driver is newer then no driver will be installed. In the example scenario described above this means: When product B is installed the existing driver (V2.00) will be replaced by a newer one (V2.30). The result is that both product A and product B now use the new driver. This should be fine for product B. However, product A will now run with driver version 2.30 which is critical because probably the product was never tested with that version. Thus, installation of a new product can break an existing installation of another product.

- **Driver software interface ambiguity**

If two or more different products (of different vendors) use the same driver then a conflict can arise when Windows applications open the device driver to communicate with the device. In the example scenario described above an application designed for product A could inadvertently open device B and try to configure the hardware which will probably not work.

- **Device naming ambiguity**

If two or more different products (of different vendors) use the same driver then a device name conflict could occur. Particularly, this applies to device names displayed in Device Manager. In the example scenario described above an end user could get confused if the item shown in Device Manager for product A is named identically to the item shown for product B.

The customization features of the USBIO driver enable you to avoid all of these conflict situations. A customized driver can be considered as a specific driver for a specific product. There will be no

overlaps with (customized) USBIO drivers shipped with other products of other vendors. In the example scenario described above, if both product A and product B are shipped with a customized driver then there will be two separate driver installations on the end user's machine. There will be two sets of driver files on hard disk and two separate drivers loaded into memory.

Note that it is possible to create a customized driver package which supports several products with similar properties, e.g. a product family of a vendor. In this case, if several products of the family are used on one machine, there will be only one set of driver files on hard disk and only one driver executable loaded into memory. A vendor can decide which of its products will be supported by a particular driver package and how many different driver packages need to be created.

To summarize the customization strategy the following rules are given:

1. A driver package provided to end users should always contain a customized driver. Do not ship the original driver provided by Thesycon together with your products.
2. If you offer a family of products, you may create a customized driver package that supports all products of this family. Windows applications shipped with the driver should be designed in such a way that all products of the family are supported. If an updated driver is delivered to end users, either as a software-only package or as part of a new product of the family, then you have to ensure that the new driver version works with all released products of the family.

In the following sections, the customization procedure is described in detail.

8.2 Customization Steps

Below, the steps needed to create a customized driver package are summarized. Some of these steps are required and some are optional.

- **Required:** Choose a new name for the driver. The driver package consists of three parts:
 - Windows 98 and Windows ME: `usbio98.sys` and `usbio98.inf`
 - Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, 32 bit: `usbio.sys` and `usbio.inf`
 - Windows XP and Windows 2003 x64 Edition: `usbio_x64.sys` and `usbio_x64.inf`

The light version uses the name `usbioL` instead of `usbio`. The new names must not contain spaces and must not cause conflicts with drivers included with Windows. The driver and inf file name on Windows 98 must meet the naming convention 8.3. Make a private copy of the `sys` and `inf` files and rename all files to your new names. Edit the renamed `.inf` file to contain the new driver name. See section 8.3.1 on page 269 for detailed information.

- **Required:** Edit your `.inf` file to contain the correct hardware ID for your device. Refer to section 8.3.2 on page 270 for more information.
- **Required:** Create a private interface identifier (GUID). Specify that GUID in your `.inf` file and use that GUID in your applications to enumerate and open devices. See section 8.3.3 on page 271 for detailed information.

- **Required:** Choose a setup class to be used for your devices and modify your .inf file accordingly. See section 8.3.4 on page 271 for more information.
- **Optional:** Adapt default driver settings. Refer to section 8.3.5 on page 273 for more information.
- **Optional:** Edit the version resources contained in usbio.sys. See section 8.4 on page 275 for more information.

8.3 Customizing usbio.inf

The usbio.inf file is used to install the kernel-mode device driver usbio.sys. It has to conform to INF file conventions defined for WDM drivers. Refer to the Windows DDK documentation [6] for more information about INF files.

The usbio.inf file itself can be renamed to any name of your choice. However, the file name extension has to be .inf. On Windows 98 the base name is limited to 8 chars.

8.3.1 Configuration of Names

In usbio.inf there is a Strings section that permits to define the driver name and some text strings that will be shown at the Windows user interface.

```
[Strings]
S_Provider="Thesycon"
S_Mfg="Thesycon"
S_DeviceClassDisplayName="USBIO controlled devices"
S_DeviceDesc1="USBIO Device"
S_DiskName="USBIO Driver Disk"
S_DriverName="usbio"
```

S_Provider

This variable defines the provider of the driver. You should use your company's name here.

S_DeviceClassDisplayName

This variable defines the manufacturer of the driver. You should use your company's name here.

S_DeviceClassDisplayName

This variable defines the display name of a private device setup class. The string is shown in Device Manager as a name for a group of devices. Refer to section 8.3.4 on page 271 for more information on device setup classes.

S_DeviceDesc1

This variable defines the device description which is shown during installation. When driver installation is finished the device description is shown in Device Manager next to the item representing your device. You should use your product's name here.

S_DiskName

This variable defines the name of your installation disk. It should correspond to the label that is

printed on the disk. The disk name is displayed by the operating system when it requests the user to insert the installation media.

S_DriverName

This variable defines the name of the usbio driver executable which is usbio.sys by default. Note that the name is given without the .sys extension. You have to set this value to the file name you want to use for usbio.sys. It is strongly recommended to use a vendor-specific driver name in order to avoid file naming conflicts with other drivers.

Important: The driver name must not contain spaces. If you modify S_DriverName then you have to modify the following sections as well:

```
[_CopyFiles_sys], [SourceDisksFiles].
```

Due to technical limitations, these sections cannot use the S_DriverName variable to specify the driver executable. Therefore, you have to edit them as well. Do a search for usbio to locate the lines to be modified.

8.3.2 Configuration of Hardware ID

Your USB device is initially enumerated by the system-provided USB bus driver. The bus driver uses vendor and product ID's from the device descriptor to create a unique hardware ID string according to the following scheme:

```
USB\VID_XXXX&PID_YYYY
```

The fields XXXX and YYYY will be replaced by the hexadecimal form of the vendor ID and the product ID. You can check the resulting hardware IDs by looking at the following registry key:

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Enum\USB
```

The usbio.inf file needs to specify the resulting hardware ID for the device within the following section:

```
[_Devices]
%S_DeviceDesc1%=_Install1, USB\VID_XXXX&PID_YYYY
```

Replace XXXX and YYYY by your specific values, for example:

```
[_Devices]
%S_DeviceDesc1%=_Install1, USB\VID_0815&PID_0001
```

Windows can distinguish between different device release numbers. The device release number is part of the device descriptor in the field bcdDevice. If the INF file should work with one special device release number of a device the hardware ID can be specified in the following way:

```
[_Devices]
%S_DeviceDesc1%=_Install1, USB\VID_0815&PID_0001&REV_ZZZZ
```

The parameter ZZZZ is the hexadecimal value of the bcdDevice value.

If your device contains more than one USB interface and the USBIO driver should be loaded on a interface of your device the following hardware ID must be used:

```
[_Devices]
%S_DeviceDesc1%=_Install1, USB\VID_0815&PID_0001&MI_00
```

The two digits after MI are the USB interface number. If you want to load the driver for more than one interface you have to add a hardware ID for each interface, e.g.:

```
[_Devices]
%S_DeviceDesc1%=_Install1, USB\VID_0815&PID_0001&MI_00
%S_DeviceDesc1%=_Install1, USB\VID_0815&PID_0001&MI_01
```

The USBIO Installation Wizard generates a set of .inf files that contain the correct hardware ID string for your device. You can either copy and paste the hardware ID to your .inf or use the wizard-generated file as a starting point to create your customized .inf file. See section 9.1 on page 277 for more information on the USBIO Installation Wizard.

8.3.3 Configuration of Software Interface Identifiers

The USBIO driver creates a device instance for each of your USB devices or each interface of your USB devices connected to the system. A device instance exports the software interface which is used by your applications to access the device. The software interface is unambiguously identified by a globally unique identifier (GUID). The USBIO driver allows you to define a private GUID that is used by your applications to enumerate and access your devices. The following section in the USBIO.inf file is used to define a private interface GUID.

```
[_AddReg_HW]
;HKR,,DriverUserInterfaceGuid,%REG_SZ%, "{????????-????-????-????-????????????}"
```

You have to use guidgen.exe to create a fresh GUID. This tool is provided with the Microsoft Platform SDK [7] or as part of the Visual Studio development platform. Copy and paste the GUID into the usbio.inf section shown above and un-comment the line specifying the VendorSpecificInterfaceGuid parameter. When done, the section should look like this:

```
[_AddReg_HW]
HKR,,DriverUserInterfaceGuid,%REG_SZ%, "{5510F365-363E-407b-80A5-C663533E93B5}"
```

Use the generated private GUID in all of your Windows applications to open the device driver. Do not use the default GUID USBIO_IID provided by Thesycon in usbio_i.h. This way, it is guaranteed that your applications can identify your devices unambiguously.

Guidgen.exe permits you to export a statement that defines a GUID constant, for example:

```
// {5510F365-363E-407b-80A5-C663533E93B5}
static const GUID MyPrivateGUID =
{ 0x5510f365, 0x363e, 0x407b, { 0x80, 0xa5, 0xc6, 0x63, 0x53, 0x3e, 0x93, 0xb5 } };
```

Copy and paste this statement to the source code of your application(s) and use the GUID constant to enumerate and open devices. Note that you cannot use the GUID that is shown in the example above. You have to use guidgen.exe to create a new one.

8.3.4 Configuration of Device Setup Class

You have to select a setup class for your kind of devices. The device setup class defines how your devices will be integrated into the operating system and where your devices will be shown in Device Manager. Basically, there are two options:

- use one of the system-defined device setup classes,
- create a private device setup class.

The device setup class is specified in the following section in `usbio.inf`.

```
[Version]
Class=USBIOControlledDevices
ClassGUID={96e73b6e-7a5a-11d4-9f24-0080c82727f4}
```

By default, the `usbio.inf` file specifies a private setup class. The alternatives are described in more detail below.

Using a system-defined device setup class

Refer to the Windows DDK [6] for a list of the available predefined classes. In most cases using a system-defined setup class is not appropriate for devices controlled by the USBIO driver. This is because most of the predefined classes are associated with a class driver provided by Microsoft.

Note that you have to use a system-defined device setup class if you plan to get the driver certified by WHQL. In this case you may consider to use the following device setup class:

```
[Version]
Class=USB
ClassGuid={36fc9e60-c465-11cf-8056-444553540000}
```

If you are using a predefined device setup class then you should remove the following sections from the `usbio.inf` file.

```
[ClassInstall32]
AddReg=_AddReg_ClassInstall

[_AddReg_ClassInstall]
HKR,,, "%S_DeviceClassDisplayName%"
HKR,, Icon, ,-20"
```

Using a private device setup class

For your private setup class you have to define a unique name and to create a GUID that identifies the class. Use `guidgen.exe` to create a new class GUID and replace the settings in the Version section, for example:

```
[Version]
Class=MyDevices
ClassGUID={5510F365-363E-407b-80A5-C663533E93B5}
```

If you specify a private class name and a private GUID then your `.inf` file has to include the following sections.

```
[ClassInstall32]
AddReg=_AddReg_ClassInstall

[_AddReg_ClassInstall]
HKR,,, "%S_DeviceClassDisplayName%"
HKR,, Icon, ,-20"
```

These sections will register the new class with the operating system. You can modify the variable `S_DeviceClassDisplayName` in the Strings section to change the name of the group shown in Device Manager. See also section 8.3.1 on page 269.

8.3.5 Customizing Default Driver Settings

The .inf file specifies some settings that define the default behavior of the driver. These settings are defined in the following section.

```
[_AddReg_HW]
;HKR,, DisableDefaultInterface, %REG_DWORD%, 1

HKR,,PowerStateOnOpen,          %REG_DWORD%, 0
HKR,,PowerStateOnClose,         %REG_DWORD%, 0
HKR,,MinPowerStateUsed,         %REG_DWORD%, 3
HKR,,MinPowerStateUnused,       %REG_DWORD%, 3
HKR,,EnableRemoteWakeup,        %REG_DWORD%, 0
HKR,,AbortPipesOnPowerDown,     %REG_DWORD%, 1
HKR,,UnconfigureOnClose,        %REG_DWORD%, 1
HKR,,ResetDeviceOnClose,        %REG_DWORD%, 0
HKR,,MaxIsoPackets,             %REG_DWORD%, 512
HKR,,ShortTransferOk,           %REG_DWORD%, 1
HKR,,RequestTimeout,            %REG_DWORD%, 1000
HKR,,SuppressPnPRemoveDlg,      %REG_DWORD%, 1

;HKR,,ConfigIndex,              %REG_DWORD%, 0
;HKR,,Interface,                %REG_DWORD%, 0
;HKR,,AlternateSetting,         %REG_DWORD%, 0

;HKR,,FxFwFile,                 %REG_SZ%,      "YourFirmwareFile.ihx"
;HKR,,FxBootloaderCheck,        %REG_DWORD%, 1
;HKR,,FxExtRamBase,             %REG_DWORD%, 0x2000
```

DisableDefaultInterface

This parameter is a flag in the range 0..1. If this flag is set the default driver interface identified by the GUID USBIO_IID in usbio_i.h is turned off. If this flag is set the default demo application does no longer work. It is recommended to set this flag during the customization.

PowerStateOnOpen

This parameter can be in the range 0..3. It contains the power state that is set if the device is opened. The values have the following meaning

- 0 – Power on
- 1 – Suspend
- 2 – Suspend
- 3 – Power off

PowerStateOnClose

This parameter can be in the range 0..3. It contains the power state that is set if the device is closed. See PowerStateOnOpen for details.

MinPowerStateUsed

This parameter can be in the range 0..3. See PowerStateOnOpen for details. This value must be set to 3 to get a WHQL certification. It allows the system to turn off the device if an application has open handles to it. If this value is set to 0 the USBIO driver does not allow to enter standby or hibernate if the device is used. The system will show a message box that contains the driver name if the system want to enter standby or hibernate.

MinPowerStateUnused

This parameter has the same meaning as MinPowerStateUsed with the exception that the rules apply if no application has an open handle to the device.

EnableRemoteWakeup

This parameter is a flag with the range 0..1. If it is set and if the device reports a remote wake up capability in the USB descriptors the remote wake up is enabled by the driver. Please note that a lot of additional conditions may prevent a remote wake up. Please check the remote wake up capability with a standard USB mouse if you have doubts that the USB port supports remote wake up correctly. This parameter can be overwritten with the API function [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#).

AbortPipesOnPowerDown

This parameter is a flag with the range 0..1. To get a WHQL certification this flag must be set to 1. If this flag is set the driver aborts all pending requests if the device enters a power down state. Please note: The application should register for power messages and stop all data traffic before the device enters a power down state. If the driver abort the pending requests a data lost can occur.

UnconfigureOnClose

This parameter is a flag with the range 0..1. If this flag is set the driver sets the device in the unconfigured state if the last handle is closed. This makes sense if the application expects an unconfigured device. This parameter can be overwritten with the API function [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#).

ResetDeviceOnClose

This parameter is a flag with the range 0..1. If this flag is set the driver sends a USB reset to the device if the last handle is closed. It is not recommended to use this flag on Windows 98 or Windows ME. It can cause stability problems of the operating system if the handle is opened and closed frequently. This parameter can be overwritten with the API function [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS](#).

MaxIsoPackets

The parameter MaxIsoPackets contains the number of isochronous frames that can be submitted with one request. It is possible to send a request with less isochronous frames in one request. The driver pre-allocates memory to submit the ISO requests to the bus driver. This parameter has an influence to the memory usage of the driver.

ShortTransferOk

This parameter is a flag with the range 0..1. This flag defines the default behavior for IN transactions. If this flag is set the driver accepts data packets smaller than the FIFO size. This parameter can be overwritten with the API function [IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS](#).

RequestTimeout

This parameter specifies the default timeout interval, in milliseconds, that applies to requests to EP0. A value of zero means an infinite interval (i.e. timeout is disabled).

SuppressPnPRemoveDlg

This parameter is a flag with the range 0..1. If this flag is set there is no entry in the Systray to stop the device. The device can be removed without a warning from the system.

ConfigIndex

This parameter specifies the index of the configuration descriptor that is used to configure the device if the driver starts. If this parameter is uncommented the driver configures the USB device during startup. If the configuration fails the driver is not loaded. Please note that this parameters specifies the index of the configuration which is different to bConfiguration value in the configuration descriptor. This parameter can be used only if the driver is used with one USB interface.

Interface

This parameter specifies the interface number that should be configured. This value is considered only if the parameter ConfigIndex is set. The default value is 0.

AlternateSetting

This parameter specifies the alternate setting that should be configured. This value is considered only if the parameter ConfigIndex is set. The default value is 0.

Firmware Download Support for Cypress FX ICs

The parameters FxFwFile, FxBootloaderCheck and FxExtRamBase can be used to download a firmware file to a Cypress FX IC. See section 4 on page 35 for more details.

8.4 Customizing Version Resources

The usbio.sys executable includes version resources. These information will be shown in Device Manager on the Driver Details dialog page or on the file's property page. You may want to modify the version resources to include your product's name or to modify copyright information. This can be done in a two-step procedure as described below.

1. Make a private copy of usbio.sys. Use Visual Studio to open the copy of usbio.sys in resource mode. You have to select Open as Resources in the File Open dialog. Edit the version resources according to your preferences and save the modified file.
2. Open a Command Prompt window and run the UpdateChecksum.exe tool on the modified file. You have to enter the following command line:
`UpdateChecksum usbio.sys`
The program UpdateChecksum.exe is part of the USBIO development kit.

9 Driver Installation and Uninstallation

This section discusses topics relating to the installation and un-installation of the USBIO device driver.

9.1 The USBIO Installation Wizard

Using the USBIO Installation Wizard is the quickest and easiest way to install the USBIO device driver. Using the wizard, the driver installation is done interactively in a step-by-step procedure. The device for which the USBIO driver should be installed can be selected from a list. It is not necessary to manually edit or copy any files. After the installation is complete, the wizard allows the specific setup files that have been generated for the selected device to be saved. These files can be used later to install the USBIO driver for the same device manually, without using the Installation Wizard.

The steps required to install the USBIO device driver using the Installation Wizard are described below.

- Make sure that you have enough privileges to install device drivers on the system. Administrator privileges are required to install device drivers on Windows 2000 or Windows XP.
- Connect your USB device to the system. After plugging in the device, Windows either launches the New Hardware Wizard and prompts you for a device driver, or it installs a driver automatically without user interaction.

If the New Hardware Wizard is launched, complete it by clicking Next on each page and Finish on the last page. Windows either installs a system-provided driver or registers the device as "Unknown".

For some kinds of devices the system does not launch the New Hardware Wizard. A system-provided device driver will be installed silently. In this case, the USBIO Installation Wizard can still install the USBIO driver.

- Start the USBIO Installation Wizard by selecting the appropriate shortcut from the Start menu. It is also possible to start the wizard directly by executing `usbwiz.exe`.
- The first page shows some hints for the installation process. Click the Next button to continue. Note that you can abort the Installation Wizard at any time by clicking the Cancel button.
- On the next page the wizard shows a list of all the USB devices currently connected to the system. Select the device for which you wish to install the USBIO driver.

The Hardware ID (if available) and the Compatible ID will be shown for the selected device.

A Hardware ID is a string that is used internally to unambiguously identify the device, by the operating system. See also section 8.3.2 on page 270 for a discussion of the hardware ID string.

A Compatible ID is a string that is used internally by the operating system to assign the device to a special class of functionality. It is built up using the bus identifier (USB), a two digit class code and optionally a two digit subclass code. The values for the class and subclass are taken from the device or configuration descriptor of the device.

If your device is not shown in the list make sure it is plugged in properly and you have completed the New Hardware Wizard as described above. You may use the Device Manager to check if the device was enumerated by the system. The device should pass the Command Verifier Test from the USB Implementers Forum before the USBIO is installed. This make sure that the device answers correctly to all USB standard requests.

Use the Refresh button to scan for active devices again, and to rebuild the list.

To continue, click the Next button.

- The next page shows detailed information about the selected USB device. If a driver is already installed for the device, information about the driver is also shown. Verify that you have selected the correct device. If not, use the Back button to return to the device list and select another device.

To install the USBIO driver for the selected device, click the Next button.

Warning: If you install the USBIO driver for a device that is currently controlled by another device driver, the existing driver will be disabled. This will happen immediately. As a result, neither the operating system nor applications will be able to use the device.

Warning: It is possible to install the USBIO for a USB keyboard or a USB mouse. Such devices cannot be used as system input devices if the USBIO driver is installed for it. This can make the system unusable.

- On the last page, the Installation Wizard shows the completion status of driver installation. If the installation was successful, the USBIO driver has been dynamically loaded by the operating system, and is now running.

The USBIO Installation Wizard allows you to show the specific driver installation files (INF) generated for the device. In the opened folder you find the created INF files and SYS file for Windows 98/ME, Windows 2000/XP/2003 and for Windows XP/2003 x64 Edition. You can use these files later to install the USBIO driver manually.

You can use the button labeled "Run Application" to start the demo application included in the USBIO package. Please refer to chapter 7 on page 263 for further information.

To quit the USBIO Installation Wizard, click Finish.

The USBIO installation wizard is designed for developers. This application must not be delivered to the final customers. A customer can make a system unusable by installing USBIO to an important system device.

9.2 Installing USBIO Manually

In order to install the USBIO driver manually you have to prepare an INF file that matches your device. Refer to section 9.5 on page 280 and section 8.3 on page 269 for more information.

The steps required to install the driver are described below.

- Connect your USB device to the system. After the device has been plugged in, Windows launches the New Hardware Wizard and prompts you for a device driver. Provide the New Hardware Wizard with the location of your installation files (e.g. usbio.inf and usbio.sys for Windows 2000/XP). Complete the wizard by following the instructions shown on screen. If the INF file matches your device, the driver should be installed successfully.

Note that, on Windows 2000 and Windows XP, the New Hardware Wizard shows a warning message that complains about the fact that the driver is not certified and digitally signed. You may ignore this warning and continue with driver installation. The USBIO driver is not certified because it is not an end-user product. When the USBIO driver is integrated into such a product, it is possible to get a certification and a digital signature from the Windows Hardware Quality Labs (WHQL).

- If the operating system contains a driver that is suitable for your device, the system does not launch the New Hardware Wizard after the device is plugged in. Instead of that a system-provided device driver will be installed silently. A USB mouse or a USB keyboard are examples for such devices. The operating system does not ask for a driver because it finds a matching entry for the device in its internal INF file data base.

You have to use the Device Manager to install the USBIO driver for a device for which a driver is already running. To start the Device Manager, right-click on the "My Computer" icon and choose Properties. In the Device Manager, right-click on your device and choose Properties. On the property page that pops up choose Driver and click the button labelled "Update Driver". The Upgrade Device Driver Wizard is started which is similar to the New Hardware Wizard described above. Provide the wizard with the location of your installation files (usbio.inf and usbio.sys) and complete driver installation by following the instructions shown on screen.

- The device manager does not allow to change the device class of a device. In the case that the INF file contains a different class as the class where the device is currently installed the device manager reports that your INF file does not contain matching information for your device even if the hardware ID matches the device. In this case you should use the installation wizard to install USBIO on such a device.
- After the driver installation has been successfully completed your device should be shown in the Device Manager in the section corresponding to the device class you specified in the file usbio.inf. You may use the Properties dialog box of that entry to verify that the USBIO driver is installed and running.
- To verify that the USBIO driver is working properly with your device, you should use the USBIO Demo Application USBIOAPP.EXE. Please refer to chapter 7 on page 263 for detailed information on the Demo Application.

9.3 The USBIO Cleanup Wizard

Using the USBIO Cleanup Wizard is the quickest and easiest way to uninstall the USBIO device driver. To start the USBIO Cleanup Wizard use the Start Menu or run the application USBIOcw.exe from the installation folder. The wizard can clean up the registry and it can remove the INF files that are copied by the system during the installation. The cleanup of the registry is equivalent to the manual deinstallation with the device manager.

On the first page of the USBIO Cleanup Wizard the required tasks can be selected. If the INF files and the registry entries are removed the system behaves after the cleanup in a same way the driver was never installed.

On the second page the wizard shows a list of installed devices. By default all instances of the USBIO driver are selected. The selection can be changed to uninstall only some instances. By highlighting a device some detailed information are displayed in the lower box.

On the next page the INF files are listed that was used to install the USBIO driver. By default all INF files are selected. The selection can be changed. By highlighting a INF file some detailed information are displayed in the lower box.

On the last page the wizard shows a summary of all performed steps.

To leave the USBIO Cleanup Wizard press the Finish button.

9.4 Uninstalling USBIO manually

To uninstall the USBIO device driver for a given device, use the Device Manager. The Device Manager can be accessed by right-clicking the "My Computer" icon on the desktop, choosing "Properties" from the context menu and then opening the Device Manager window. Within the Device Manager window, double-click on the entry for the device and choose the property page labelled "Driver". There are two options to uninstall the USBIO device driver:

- Remove the selected device from the system by clicking the button "Uninstall". The operating system will re-install a driver the next time the device is connected or the system is rebooted.
- Install a new driver for the selected device by clicking the button "Update Driver". The operating system launches the Upgrade Device Driver Wizard which searches for driver files or lets you select a driver.

In order to avoid automatic and silent re-installation of USBIO by the operating system, it is necessary to manually remove the INF file used to install the USBIO driver.

During driver installation, Windows stores a copy of the INF file in its internal INF file data base located in %WINDIR%\INF\. The name of the INF file is changed before it is stored in the database. On Windows 2000 and Windows XP the INF file is stored as oemX.inf, where X is a decimal number. On Windows 98 and Windows ME the INF file is stored in the folder %WINDIR%\INF\other. The name of the INF file is changed where a combination of the manufacturer string entry and the original INF file name is used.

The best way to find the correct INF file is to do a search for some significant string in all the INF files in the directory %WINDIR%\INF\ and its subdirectories. Note that on Windows 2000/XP/2003, by default the %WINDIR%\INF\ directory has the attribute Hidden. Therefore, by default the directory is not shown in Windows Explorer.

Once you have located the INF file, delete it. This will prevent Windows from reinstalling the USBIO driver. Instead, the New Hardware Wizard will be launched and you will be asked for a driver.

9.5 Creating a Driver Setup Package

A Setup Information File (INF) is required for proper installation of the USBIO device driver. This file describes the driver to be installed and defines the operations to be performed during the installation process.

The USBIO driver package consists of 3 INF files and 3 SYS files. See section 8.2 on page 268 for details. Depending on the platforms that should be supported by the device some or all INF files must be customized.

An INF file is in ASCII text format. It can be viewed and modified with any text editor, for example Notepad.exe. The contents and the syntax of an INF file are documented in the Microsoft Windows DDK. For instructions on how to create a device-specific INF file, refer to chapter 8 on page 267.

The INF file is loaded and interpreted by a software component called Device Installer that is built into the operating system. The Device Installer is closely related to the Plug&Play Manager that handles connection and removal of USB devices. After the Plug&Play Manager has detected a new USB device, the system searches its internal INF file database, located in %WINDIR%\INF\, for a matching driver. If no driver can be found, the New Hardware Wizard pops up and asks the user for a driver.

The association of device and driver is based on a string called Hardware ID. The Plug&Play Manager builds the Hardware ID string from the USB descriptors. The string is prefixed by the bus identifier USB. An example for a Hardware ID string is:

```
USB\VID_0815&PID_0001
```

Another way to associate a device with a driver is to use a string called Compatible ID. See section 8.3.2 on page 270 for details.

Collecting devices in device classes makes it possible to provide a class device driver. The class device driver is used whenever the system detects a device that belongs to the appropriate device class.

In order to prepare an installation disk that can be used to install the USBIO driver for your device, the following steps are required.

- Copy the customized USBIO driver binaries SYS to a floppy disk or to a directory location of your choice. Copy the customized INF files to the same location. Rename the files. Use a prefix derived from your company name and your product.
- Open the .inf file(s) using a text editor, for example Notepad.exe. Modify the file(s) according to the instructions provided in section 8.3 on page 269. Save the INF file(s) to accommodate your changes.

Provide both files, the .sys and the .inf files, on your installation media (floppy disk or CD-ROM).

9.6 Installing the Driver Package at the Customer PC

It is not recommended to copy the INF files and the SYS files manually to any system folder. Follow one of the next sections to perform your installation.

9.6.1 Without Pre-Installation

The user connects the device to the PC. The system does not provide a matching device driver. The hardware wizard is launched. The user should guide the hardware wizard to your installation medium with the prepared INF and SYS files.

This method has some drawbacks:

- The user must select the advanced driver installation to guide the wizard to the installation medium. Otherwise no driver is installed.
- The system requests the driver disk again if a device without USB serial number is connected to a different USB port or a device with a new serial number is connected to the PC.

It is not recommended to use this method.

9.6.2 With Pre-Installation

Perform the following steps during the software setup:

- Copy the INF files and SYS files to a folder on the hard disk. The storage should be permanent. It should not be a system folder under the Windows tree. Typically the folder is `Program Files\<Company>\<Program>\<Version>\Drivers`.
- Call the system function `SetupCopyOEMInf()`. It requires administrator privileges. If the driver is not certified a warning may appear.
- Ask the user to connect the device to the PC. If the driver has a WHQL certification the installation is performed silent. Otherwise the hardware wizard is launched. The user can process the wizard by pressing the Next button all the time. A warning that the driver is not digitally signed may appear a second time.
- To update an existing driver call the system function `UpdateDriverForPlugAndPlayDevices()`. This function is not available on Windows 98. On a x64 Edition of the operating system this function must be called in a 64 bit process context.

For more advanced driver installation and un-installation we recommend the Device Installation Toolkit (DIT) provided by Thesycon. A free demo version can be downloaded on the Thesycon home page.

10 Debug Support

10.1 Enable Debug Traces

The licensed version of the driver package contains a folder `usbio.chk` with the debug version of the driver. This folder is not part of the demo version. The debug version of the driver can generate text messages on a kernel debugger or a similar application to view kernel output. These messages can help to analyze problems.

To enable the debug traces follow these steps.

- Install the driver with the normal setup.
- Copy the debug version of the driver to the folder `verb!` has been renamed the debug version must be renamed in the same way.
- Reboot the PC to make sure the new driver is loaded. Connect your device.
- Open the registry editor. On Windows 2000/XP the following path must be opened:
`\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\services\YOUR_SERVICE_NAME\`.
`YOUR_SERVICE_NAME` is the name of the service name defined in the INF file.
 On Windows 98/ME this path must be opened:
`\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\services\usbio\`. Edit the DWORD value key `DebugMask`. The messages are grouped to special topics. Each topic can be enabled with a bit in the debug mask. To enable the messages on bit 5 the `DebugMask` must be set to `0x00000020`. The `DebugMask` contains the or'ed value of all active message bits.
- Disconnect all devices or reboot the PC to make sure the driver is loaded again. The driver reads the registry key `DebugMask` if it is started.
- Start a kernel debugger like WinDbg or an application to receive the kernel traces. Connect your device.

The following table summarize the meaning of the debug bits.

Table 7: Debug Mask Bit Content

Bit	Content
0	Fatal errors
1	Warnings
2	Information
3	PnP
4	Power management
5	Get/Set Descriptors
6	Open, close, create, cleanup

Table 7: (continued)

Bit	Content
7	IO Control, dispatch
8	Read and Write
9	Submit Request
10	FX Firmware Download
17	Driver Entry
18	Delete Device
24	Dumps

11 Related Documents

References

- [1] USBIO COM Interface Reference Manual, Thesycon GmbH,
<http://www.thesycon.de>
- [2] Universal Serial Bus Specification 1.1,
<http://www.usb.org>
- [3] Universal Serial Bus Specification 2.0,
<http://www.usb.org>
- [4] USB device class specifications (Audio, HID, Printer, etc.),
<http://www.usb.org>
- [5] Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) Library,
<http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/>
- [6] Windows Driver Development Kit,
<http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/>
- [7] Windows Platform SDK,
<http://msdn.microsoft.com/library/>

Index

- ~CSetupApiDll
 - CSetupApiDll::~CSetupApiDll, 259
- ~CUsbIoBufPool
 - CUsbIoBufPool::~CUsbIoBufPool, 252
- ~CUsbIoBuf
 - CUsbIoBuf::~CUsbIoBuf, 246
- ~CUsbIoPipe
 - CUsbIoPipe::~CUsbIoPipe, 201
- ~CUsbIoReader
 - CUsbIoReader::~CUsbIoReader, 237
- ~CUsbIoThread
 - CUsbIoThread::~CUsbIoThread, 225
- ~CUsbIoWriter
 - CUsbIoWriter::~CUsbIoWriter, 240
- ~CUsbIo
 - CUsbIo::~CUsbIo, 150
- AbortPipe
 - CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe, 214
- AcquireDevice
 - CUsbIo::AcquireDevice, 165
- ActualAveragingInterval
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 123
- AdditionalEvent
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion, 207
- AllocateBuffers
 - CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers, 226
- Allocate
 - CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate, 253
- AlternateSetting
 - Member of USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA, 104
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 111
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetInterface, 188
- AlternateSettingIndex
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING, 105
- APIVersion
 - Member of USBIO_DRIVER_INFO, 95
- AverageRate
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 123
- AveragingInterval
 - Member of USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, 120
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics, 221
- BandwidthInfo
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetBandwidthInfo, 168
- Bind
 - CUsbIoPipe::Bind, 202
- Buf
 - Parameter of CUsbIoBufPool::Put, 256
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::Read, 205
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion, 207
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::Write, 206
 - Parameter of CUsbIoThread::BufErrorHandler, 232

- Parameter of CUsbIoThread::ProcessBuffer, 231
- Parameter of CUsbIoThread::ProcessData, 230
- BufArray
 - Member of CUsbIoBufPool, 258
- BufErrorHandler
 - CUsbIoThread::BufErrorHandler, 232
- Buffer
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest, 181
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest, 182
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
 - Parameter of CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf, 244
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn, 217
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut, 219
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync, 209
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync, 211
- BufferMem
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, 249
- BufferMemAllocated
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, 250
- BufferMemory
 - Member of CUsbIoBufPool, 258
- BufferSize
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, 249
 - Parameter of CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf, 244, 245
- Buffer
 - CUsbIoBuf::Buffer, 247
- BufPool
 - Member of CUsbIoThread, 236
- ByteCount
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest, 181
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest, 182
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor, 172
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor, 174
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn, 217
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut, 219
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync, 209
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync, 211
- BytesReturned
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::IoctlSync, 198
- BytesTransferred
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, 249
- BytesTransferred_H
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 124
- BytesTransferred_L
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 123
- CancelIo
 - CUsbIo::CancelIo, 197
- CheckedBuildDetected
 - Member of CUsbIo, 200
- Class

- Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 111
- ClassOrVendorInRequest
 - CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest, 181
- ClassOrVendorOutRequest
 - CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest, 182
- ClearFeature
 - CUsbIo::ClearFeature, 179
- Close
 - CUsbIo::Close, 155
- Conf
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetConfiguration, 183
- ConfigurationIndex
 - Member of USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, 106
- ConfigurationValue
 - Member of USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA, 102
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetConfiguration, 185
- ConsumedBandwidth
 - Member of USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 93
- Context
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, 249
- ControlTransfer
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn, 217
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut, 219
- Count
 - Member of CUsbIoBufPool, 258
- CreateDeviceList
 - CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList, 151
- CritSect
 - Member of CUsbIoBufPool, 258
 - Member of CUsbIo, 200
- CSetupApiDll
 - CSetupApiDll::CSetupApiDll, 259
- CSetupApiDll, 259
- CSetupApiDll::~~CSetupApiDll, 259
- CSetupApiDll::CSetupApiDll, 259
- CSetupApiDll::Load, 260
- CSetupApiDll::Release, 261
- CurrentCount
 - CUsbIoBufPool::CurrentCount, 257
- CUsbIoBufPool
 - CUsbIoBufPool::CUsbIoBufPool, 252
- CUsbIoBufPool, 251
- CUsbIoBufPool::~~CUsbIoBufPool, 252
- CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate, 253
- CUsbIoBufPool::CurrentCount, 257
- CUsbIoBufPool::CUsbIoBufPool, 252
- CUsbIoBufPool::Free, 254
- CUsbIoBufPool::Get, 255
- CUsbIoBufPool::Put, 256
- CUsbIoBuf
 - CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf, 243–245
- CUsbIoBuf, 243
- CUsbIoBuf::~~CUsbIoBuf, 246
- CUsbIoBuf::Buffer, 247

- CUsbIoBuf::CUsbIoBuf, 243–245
- CUsbIoBuf::Size, 248
- CUsbIoPipe
 - CUsbIoPipe::CUsbIoPipe, 201
- CUsbIoPipe, 201
- CUsbIoPipe::~~CUsbIoPipe, 201
- CUsbIoPipe::AbortPipe, 214
- CUsbIoPipe::Bind, 202
- CUsbIoPipe::CUsbIoPipe, 201
- CUsbIoPipe::GetPipeParameters, 215
- CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn, 217
- CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut, 219
- CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics, 222
- CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync, 209
- CUsbIoPipe::Read, 205
- CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipeStatistics, 224
- CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe, 213
- CUsbIoPipe::SetPipeParameters, 216
- CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics, 221
- CUsbIoPipe::Unbind, 204
- CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion, 207
- CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync, 211
- CUsbIoPipe::Write, 206
- CUsbIoReader
 - CUsbIoReader::CUsbIoReader, 237
- CUsbIoReader, 237
- CUsbIoReader::~~CUsbIoReader, 237
- CUsbIoReader::CUsbIoReader, 237
- CUsbIoReader::TerminateThread, 239
- CUsbIoReader::ThreadRoutine, 238
- CUsbIoThread
 - CUsbIoThread::CUsbIoThread, 225
- CUsbIoThread, 225
- CUsbIoThread::~~CUsbIoThread, 225
- CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers, 226
- CUsbIoThread::BufErrorHandler, 232
- CUsbIoThread::CUsbIoThread, 225
- CUsbIoThread::FreeBuffers, 227
- CUsbIoThread::OnThreadExit, 233
- CUsbIoThread::ProcessBuffer, 231
- CUsbIoThread::ProcessData, 230
- CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread, 229
- CUsbIoThread::StartThread, 228
- CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread, 235
- CUsbIoThread::ThreadRoutine, 234
- CUsbIoWriter
 - CUsbIoWriter::CUsbIoWriter, 240
- CUsbIoWriter, 240
- CUsbIoWriter::~~CUsbIoWriter, 240
- CUsbIoWriter::CUsbIoWriter, 240
- CUsbIoWriter::TerminateThread, 242
- CUsbIoWriter::ThreadRoutine, 241
- CUsbIo
 - CUsbIo::CUsbIo, 150

- CUsbIo, 150
- CUsbIo::~~CUsbIo, 150
- CUsbIo::AcquireDevice, 165
- CUsbIo::CancelIo, 197
- CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest, 181
- CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest, 182
- CUsbIo::ClearFeature, 179
- CUsbIo::Close, 155
- CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList, 151
- CUsbIo::CUsbIo, 150
- CUsbIo::CyclePort, 193
- CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList, 152
- CUsbIo::ErrorText, 199
- CUsbIo::GetBandwidthInfo, 168
- CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor, 172
- CUsbIo::GetConfigurationInfo, 186
- CUsbIo::GetConfiguration, 185
- CUsbIo::GetCurrentFrameNumber, 194
- CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
- CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor, 171
- CUsbIo::GetDeviceInfo, 167
- CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails, 156
- CUsbIo::GetDeviceParameters, 190
- CUsbIo::GetDevicePathName, 158
- CUsbIo::GetDevicePowerState, 195
- CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo, 164
- CUsbIo::GetInterface, 188
- CUsbIo::GetStatus, 180
- CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor, 174
- CUsbIo::IoctlSync, 198
- CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild, 160
- CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion, 161
- CUsbIo::IsLightVersion, 162
- CUsbIo::IsOpen, 159
- CUsbIo::IsOperatingAtHighSpeed, 163
- CUsbIo::Open, 153
- CUsbIo::ReleaseDevice, 166
- CUsbIo::ResetDevice, 192
- CUsbIo::SetConfiguration, 183
- CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
- CUsbIo::SetDeviceParameters, 191
- CUsbIo::SetDevicePowerState, 196
- CUsbIo::SetFeature, 178
- CUsbIo::SetInterface, 187
- CUsbIo::StoreConfigurationDescriptor, 189
- CUsbIo::UnconfigureDevice, 184
- CyclePort
 - CUsbIo::CyclePort, 193
- DemoVersionDetected
 - Member of CUsbIo, 200
- Desc
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor, 172
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor, 171

- Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor, 174
- Parameter of CUsbIo::StoreConfigurationDescriptor, 189
- DescriptorIndex
 - Member of USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST, 97
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
- DescriptorType
 - Member of USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST, 97
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
- DestroyDeviceList
 - CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList, 152
- DeviceInfo
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDeviceInfo, 167
- DeviceList
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::DestroyDeviceList, 152
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails, 156
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::Open, 153
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::Bind, 202
- DeviceNumber
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails, 156
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::Open, 153
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::Bind, 202
- DevicePowerState
 - Member of USBIO_DEVICE_POWER, 117
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDevicePowerState, 195
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDevicePowerState, 196
- DevicePowerStated0
 - Entry of USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 133
- DevicePowerStated1
 - Entry of USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 133
- DevicePowerStated2
 - Entry of USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 133
- DevicePowerStated3
 - Entry of USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 133
- DevParam
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDeviceParameters, 190
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDeviceParameters, 191
- DriverBuildNumber
 - Member of USBIO_DRIVER_INFO, 95
- DriverInfo
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo, 164
- DriverVersion
 - Member of USBIO_DRIVER_INFO, 95
- dwIoControlCode
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, 76
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, 71
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, 73
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, 54
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, 55
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, 45
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, 69
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 65
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 59

- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, [47](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, [62](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, [42](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, [66](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [57](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [64](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, [67](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, [48](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [77](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, [46](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, [83](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, [84](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, [81](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, [72](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, [60](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, [75](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, [50](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, [43](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [58](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [63](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, [44](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, [53](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [78](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, [79](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, [49](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, [74](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, [52](#)

EndpointAddress

- Member of USBIO_BIND_PIPE, [118](#)
- Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [113](#)
- Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::Bind, [202](#)

ErrorCode

- Parameter of CUsbIo::ErrorText, [199](#)

ErrorCount

- Member of USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER, [127](#)

ErrorText

- CUsbIo::ErrorText, [199](#)

FeatureSelector

- Member of USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST, [99](#)
- Parameter of CUsbIo::ClearFeature, [179](#)
- Parameter of CUsbIo::SetFeature, [178](#)

FileHandle

- Member of CUsbIo, [200](#)

FirstPending

- Member of CUsbIoThread, [236](#)

Flags

- Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, [107](#)
- Member of USBIO_DEVICE_INFO, [94](#)
- Member of USBIO_DRIVER_INFO, [96](#)
- Member of USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER, [126](#)
- Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER, [125](#)
- Member of USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [119](#)
- Member of USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, [121](#)

- Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics, 222
- FrameNumber
 - Member of USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER, 116
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetCurrentFrameNumber, 194
- FreeBuffers
 - CUsbIoThread::FreeBuffers, 227
- Free
 - CUsbIoBufPool::Free, 254
- GetBandwidthInfo
 - CUsbIo::GetBandwidthInfo, 168
- GetConfigurationDescriptor
 - CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor, 172
- GetConfigurationInfo
 - CUsbIo::GetConfigurationInfo, 186
- GetConfiguration
 - CUsbIo::GetConfiguration, 185
- GetCurrentFrameNumber
 - CUsbIo::GetCurrentFrameNumber, 194
- GetDescriptor
 - CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
- GetDeviceDescriptor
 - CUsbIo::GetDeviceDescriptor, 171
- GetDeviceInfo
 - CUsbIo::GetDeviceInfo, 167
- GetDeviceInstanceDetails
 - CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails, 156
- GetDeviceParameters
 - CUsbIo::GetDeviceParameters, 190
- GetDevicePathName
 - CUsbIo::GetDevicePathName, 158
- GetDevicePowerState
 - CUsbIo::GetDevicePowerState, 195
- GetDriverInfo
 - CUsbIo::GetDriverInfo, 164
- GetInterface
 - CUsbIo::GetInterface, 188
- GetPipeParameters
 - CUsbIoPipe::GetPipeParameters, 215
- GetStatus
 - CUsbIo::GetStatus, 180
- GetStringDescriptor
 - CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor, 174
- Get
 - CUsbIoBufPool::Get, 255
- Head
 - Member of CUsbIoBufPool, 258
- InBuffer
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::IoctlSync, 198
- InBufferSize
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::IoctlSync, 198
- Index
 - Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, 107

- Member of USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST, 99
- Member of USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST, 100
- Parameter of CUsbIo::ClearFeature, 179
- Parameter of CUsbIo::GetConfigurationDescriptor, 172
- Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStatus, 180
- Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor, 174
- Parameter of CUsbIo::SetFeature, 178
- Info
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetConfigurationInfo, 186
- Interface
 - Member of USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, 103
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetInterface, 188
- InterfaceGuid
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::CreateDeviceList, 151
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDeviceInstanceDetails, 156
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::Open, 153
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::Bind, 202
- InterfaceIndex
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING, 105
- InterfaceInfo[USBIO_MAX_INTERFACES]
 - Member of USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 115
- InterfaceList[USBIO_MAX_INTERFACES]
 - Member of USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, 106
- InterfaceNumber
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 111
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 114
- Interval
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 113
- IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, 76
- IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, 71
- IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, 73
- IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, 54
- IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, 55
- IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, 45
- IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, 69
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 65
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 59
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, 47
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, 62
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, 42
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, 66
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 57
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 64
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, 67
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, 48
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 77
- IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, 46
- IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, 83
- IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, 84
- IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, 81
- IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, 72
- IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, 60
- IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, 75
- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, 50

- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, [43](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [58](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [63](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, [44](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, [53](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [78](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, [79](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, [49](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, [74](#)
- IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, [52](#)
- IoctlCode
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::IoctlSync, [198](#)
- IoctlSync
 - CUsbIo::IoctlSync, [198](#)
- IsCheckedBuild
 - CUsbIo::IsCheckedBuild, [160](#)
- IsDemoVersion
 - CUsbIo::IsDemoVersion, [161](#)
- IsLightVersion
 - CUsbIo::IsLightVersion, [162](#)
- IsoPacket[1]
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER, [129](#)
- IsOpen
 - CUsbIo::IsOpen, [159](#)
- IsOperatingAtHighSpeed
 - CUsbIo::IsOperatingAtHighSpeed, [163](#)
- IsoTransfer
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER, [129](#)
- LanguageId
 - Member of USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST, [97](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, [169](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStringDescriptor, [174](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, [176](#)
- LastPending
 - Member of CUsbIoThread, [236](#)
- Length
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_PACKET, [128](#)
- LightVersionDetected
 - Member of CUsbIo, [200](#)
- Load
 - CSetupApiDll::Load, [260](#)
- lpBytesReturned
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, [76](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, [71](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, [73](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, [54](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, [55](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, [45](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, [69](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, [65](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [59](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, [47](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, [62](#)

Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, 42
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, 66
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 57
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 64
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, 67
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, 48
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 77
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, 46
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, 83
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, 84
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, 81
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, 72
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, 60
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, 75
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, 50
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, 43
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 58
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 63
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, 44
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, 53
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 78
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, 79
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, 49
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, 74
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, 52
 lpInBuffer
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, 76
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, 71
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, 73
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, 54
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, 55
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, 45
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, 69
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 65
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 59
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, 47
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, 62
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, 42
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, 66
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 57
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 64
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, 67
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, 48
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 77
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, 46
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, 83
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, 84
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, 81
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, 72
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, 60
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, 75
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, 50
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, 43
 Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 58

- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 63
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, 44
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, 53
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 78
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, 79
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, 49
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, 74
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, 52

lpOutBuffer

- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, 76
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, 71
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, 73
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, 54
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, 55
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, 45
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, 69
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 65
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 59
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, 47
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, 62
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, 42
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, 66
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 57
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 64
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, 67
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, 48
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 77
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, 46
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, 83
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, 84
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, 81
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, 72
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, 60
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, 75
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, 50
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, 43
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 58
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 63
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, 44
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, 53
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, 78
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, 79
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, 49
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, 74
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, 52

MaxErrorCount

- Member of CUsbIoThread, 236

MaximumPacketSize

- Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 113

MaximumTransferSize

- Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING, 105
- Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 113

MaxIoErrorCount

- Parameter of CUsbIoThread::StartThread, [228](#)
- mDevDetail
 - Member of CUsbIo, [200](#)
- mThreadHandle
 - Member of CUsbIoThread, [236](#)
- NbOfInterfaces
 - Member of USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [115](#)
 - Member of USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, [106](#)
- NbOfPipes
 - Member of USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [115](#)
- Next
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, [249](#)
- nInBufferSize
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, [76](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, [71](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, [73](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, [54](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, [55](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, [45](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, [69](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, [65](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [59](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, [47](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, [62](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, [42](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, [66](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [57](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [64](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, [67](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, [48](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [77](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, [46](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, [83](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, [84](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, [81](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, [72](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, [60](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, [75](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, [50](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, [43](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [58](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [63](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, [44](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, [53](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [78](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, [79](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, [49](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, [74](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, [52](#)
- nOutBufferSize
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ABORT_PIPE, [76](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_ACQUIRE_DEVICE, [71](#)
 - Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_BIND_PIPE, [73](#)

- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_IN_REQUEST, [54](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_OUT_REQUEST, [55](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CLEAR_FEATURE, [45](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_CYCLE_PORT, [69](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_BANDWIDTH_INFO, [65](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [59](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION, [47](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_CURRENT_FRAME_NUMBER, [62](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DESCRIPTOR, [42](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_INFO, [66](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [57](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [64](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_DRIVER_INFO, [67](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, [48](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [77](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_GET_STATUS, [46](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_IN, [83](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER_OUT, [84](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, [81](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RELEASE_DEVICE, [72](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_DEVICE, [60](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_RESET_PIPE, [75](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, [50](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DESCRIPTOR, [43](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, [58](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, [63](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_FEATURE, [44](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_INTERFACE, [53](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SET_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [78](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, [79](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_STORE_CONFIG_DESCRIPTOR, [49](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNBIND_PIPE, [74](#)
- Parameter of IOCTL_USBIO_UNCONFIGURE_DEVICE, [52](#)
- NumberOfBuffers
 - Parameter of CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate, [253](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers, [226](#)
- NumberOfBytesToTransfer
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, [249](#)
- NumberOfPackets
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER, [126](#)
- NumberOfPipes
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [111](#)
- Offset
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_PACKET, [128](#)
- OnThreadExit
 - CUsbIoThread::OnThreadExit, [233](#)
- OpenCount
 - Member of USBIO_DEVICE_INFO, [94](#)
- Open
 - CUsbIo::Open, [153](#)
- OperationFinished
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, [249](#)
- Options

- Member of USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 109
- OutBuffer
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::IoctlSync, 198
- OutBufferSize
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::IoctlSync, 198
- Overlapped
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, 249
 - Member of CUsbIo, 200
- PipeControlTransferIn
 - CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferIn, 217
- PipeControlTransferOut
 - CUsbIoPipe::PipeControlTransferOut, 219
- PipeInfo[USBIO_MAX_PIPES]
 - Member of USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 115
- PipeParameters
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::GetPipeParameters, 215
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::SetPipeParameters, 216
- PipeStatistics
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics, 222
- PipeType
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 113
- ProcessBuffer
 - CUsbIoThread::ProcessBuffer, 231
- ProcessData
 - CUsbIoThread::ProcessData, 230
- Protocol
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 111
- Put
 - CUsbIoBufPool::Put, 256
- QueryPipeStatistics
 - CUsbIoPipe::QueryPipeStatistics, 222
- ReadSync
 - CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync, 209
- Read
 - CUsbIoPipe::Read, 205
- Recipient
 - Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, 107
 - Member of USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST, 97
 - Member of USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST, 99
 - Member of USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST, 100
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ClearFeature, 179
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetDescriptor, 169
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStatus, 180
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetFeature, 178
- ReleaseDevice
 - CUsbIo::ReleaseDevice, 166
- Release
 - CSetupApiDll::Release, 261
- Request
 - Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, 107
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorInRequest, 181

- Parameter of CUsbIo::ClassOrVendorOutRequest, 182
- RequestsFailed
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 124
- RequestsSucceeded
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 124
- RequestTimeout
 - Member of USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 109
- RequestTypeReservedBits
 - Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, 107
- reserved1
 - Member of USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 93
 - Member of USBIO_DEVICE_INFO, 94
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 111
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 114
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 124
 - Member of USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, 120
- reserved2
 - Member of USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO, 93
 - Member of USBIO_DEVICE_INFO, 94
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 111
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 114
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, 124
 - Member of USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, 120
- reserved3
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 114
- ResetDevice
 - CUsbIo::ResetDevice, 192
- ResetPipeStatistics
 - CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipeStatistics, 224
- ResetPipe
 - CUsbIoPipe::ResetPipe, 213
- SetConfiguration
 - CUsbIo::SetConfiguration, 183
- SetDescriptor
 - CUsbIo::SetDescriptor, 176
- SetDeviceParameters
 - CUsbIo::SetDeviceParameters, 191
- SetDevicePowerState
 - CUsbIo::SetDevicePowerState, 196
- SetFeature
 - CUsbIo::SetFeature, 178
- SetInterface
 - CUsbIo::SetInterface, 187
- SetPipeParameters
 - CUsbIoPipe::SetPipeParameters, 216
- Setting
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::SetInterface, 187
- SetupPacket[8]
 - Member of USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER, 125
- SetupPipeStatistics
 - CUsbIoPipe::SetupPipeStatistics, 221
- ShutdownThread
 - CUsbIoThread::ShutdownThread, 229

- SizeOfBuffer
 - Parameter of CUsbIoBufPool::Allocate, [253](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIoThread::AllocateBuffers, [226](#)
- Size
 - CUsbIoBuf::Size, [248](#)
- smSetupApi
 - Member of CUsbIo, [200](#)
- StartFrame
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER, [126](#)
- StartThread
 - CUsbIoThread::StartThread, [228](#)
- Status
 - Member of CUsbIoBuf, [249](#)
 - Member of USBIO_ISO_PACKET, [128](#)
 - Member of USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA, [101](#)
- StatusValue
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::GetStatus, [180](#)
- StoreConfigurationDescriptor
 - CUsbIo::StoreConfigurationDescriptor, [189](#)
- StringBuffer
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ErrorText, [199](#)
- StringBufferSize
 - Parameter of CUsbIo::ErrorText, [199](#)
- SubClass
 - Member of USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [111](#)
- TerminateFlag
 - Member of CUsbIoThread, [236](#)
- TerminateThread
 - CUsbIoReader::TerminateThread, [239](#)
 - CUsbIoThread::TerminateThread, [235](#)
 - CUsbIoWriter::TerminateThread, [242](#)
- ThreadHandle
 - Member of CUsbIoThread, [236](#)
- ThreadID
 - Member of CUsbIoThread, [236](#)
- ThreadRoutine
 - CUsbIoReader::ThreadRoutine, [238](#)
 - CUsbIoThread::ThreadRoutine, [234](#)
 - CUsbIoWriter::ThreadRoutine, [241](#)
- Timeout
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::ReadSync, [209](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion, [207](#)
 - Parameter of CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync, [211](#)
- TotalBandwidth
 - Member of USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO, [93](#)
- Type
 - Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, [107](#)
- Unbind
 - CUsbIoPipe::Unbind, [204](#)
- UnconfigureDevice
 - CUsbIo::UnconfigureDevice, [184](#)
- USBIO_BANDWIDTH_INFO, [93](#)
- USBIO_BIND_PIPE, [118](#)

USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, 107
 USBIO_CONFIGURATION_INFO, 115
 USBIO_DESCRIPTOR_REQUEST, 97
 USBIO_DEVICE_INFO, 94
 USBIO_DEVICE_PARAMETERS, 109
 USBIO_DEVICE_POWER_STATE, 133
 USBIO_DEVICE_POWER, 117
 USBIO_DRIVER_INFO, 95
 USBIO_ERR_ADDITIONAL_EVENT_SIGNALLED, 143
 USBIO_ERR_ALREADY_BOUND, 140
 USBIO_ERR_ALREADY_CONFIGURED, 140
 USBIO_ERR_BABBLE_DETECTED, 135
 USBIO_ERR_BAD_START_FRAME, 137
 USBIO_ERR_BTSTUFF, 134
 USBIO_ERR_BUFFER_OVERRUN, 135
 USBIO_ERR_BUFFER_UNDERRUN, 135
 USBIO_ERR_BULK_RESTRICTION, 144
 USBIO_ERR_CANCELED, 138
 USBIO_ERR_CONTROL_NOT_SUPPORTED, 140
 USBIO_ERR_CONTROL_RESTRICTION, 144
 USBIO_ERR_CRC, 134
 USBIO_ERR_DATA_BUFFER_ERROR, 136
 USBIO_ERR_DATA_OVERRUN, 134
 USBIO_ERR_DATA_TOGGLE_MISMATCH, 134
 USBIO_ERR_DATA_UNDERRUN, 135
 USBIO_ERR_DEMO_EXPIRED, 142
 USBIO_ERR_DEV_NOT_RESPONDING, 134
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_ACQUIRED, 143
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_ALREADY_OPENED, 145
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_GONE, 138
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND, 144
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_OPEN, 145
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_NOT_PRESENT, 140
 USBIO_ERR_DEVICE_OPENED, 143
 USBIO_ERR_ENDPOINT_HALTED, 136
 USBIO_ERR_EP0_RESTRICTION, 144
 USBIO_ERR_ERROR_BUSY, 136
 USBIO_ERR_ERROR_SHORT_TRANSFER, 137
 USBIO_ERR_FAILED, 139
 USBIO_ERR_FIFO, 135
 USBIO_ERR_FRAME_CONTROL_NOT_OWNED, 137
 USBIO_ERR_FRAME_CONTROL_OWNED, 137
 USBIO_ERR_INSUFFICIENT_RESOURCES, 138
 USBIO_ERR_INTERFACE_NOT_FOUND, 142
 USBIO_ERR_INTERNAL_HC_ERROR, 137
 USBIO_ERR_INTERRUPT_RESTRICTION, 144
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_CONFIGURATION_DESCRIPTOR, 137
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_DEVICE_STATE, 142
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_DIRECTION, 141
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_FUNCTION_PARAM, 145
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_INBUFFER, 139
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_IOCTL, 141
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_ISO_PACKET, 142
 USBIO_ERR_INVALID_OUTBUFFER, 139

USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAMETER, 136
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PARAM, 142
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PIPE_FLAGS, 138
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PIPE_HANDLE, 136
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_POWER_STATE, 142
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_PROCESS, 143
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_RECIPIENT, 141
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_TYPE, 141
USBIO_ERR_INVALID_URB_FUNCTION, 136
USBIO_ERR_ISO_NA_LATE_USBPORT, 139
USBIO_ERR_ISO_NOT_ACCESSED_BY_HW, 139
USBIO_ERR_ISO_NOT_ACCESSED_LATE, 139
USBIO_ERR_ISO_RESTRICTION, 144
USBIO_ERR_ISO_TD_ERROR, 139
USBIO_ERR_ISOCH_REQUEST_FAILED, 137
USBIO_ERR_LOAD_SETUP_API_FAILED, 145
USBIO_ERR_NO_BANDWIDTH, 136
USBIO_ERR_NO_MEMORY, 136
USBIO_ERR_NO_SUCH_DEVICE_INSTANCE, 145
USBIO_ERR_NOT_ACCESSED, 135
USBIO_ERR_NOT_BOUND, 140
USBIO_ERR_NOT_CONFIGURED, 140
USBIO_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED, 137
USBIO_ERR_OPEN_PIPES, 140
USBIO_ERR_OUT_OF_ADDRESS_SPACE, 142
USBIO_ERR_OUT_OF_MEMORY, 139
USBIO_ERR_PENDING_REQUESTS, 140
USBIO_ERR_PID_CHECK_FAILURE, 134
USBIO_ERR_PIPE_NOT_FOUND, 141
USBIO_ERR_PIPE_RESTRICTION, 144
USBIO_ERR_PIPE_SIZE_RESTRICTION, 144
USBIO_ERR_POOL_EMPTY, 141
USBIO_ERR_POWER_DOWN, 143
USBIO_ERR_REQUEST_FAILED, 136
USBIO_ERR_RESERVED1, 135
USBIO_ERR_RESERVED2, 135
USBIO_ERR_SET_CONFIG_FAILED, 138
USBIO_ERR_SET_CONFIGURATION_FAILED, 143
USBIO_ERR_STALL_PID, 134
USBIO_ERR_STATUS_NOT_MAPPED, 138
USBIO_ERR_SUCCESS, 134
USBIO_ERR_TIMEOUT, 141
USBIO_ERR_TOO_MUCH_ISO_PACKETS, 141
USBIO_ERR_UNEXPECTED_PID, 134
USBIO_ERR_USBD_BUFFER_TOO_SMALL, 138
USBIO_ERR_USBD_INTERFACE_NOT_FOUND, 138
USBIO_ERR_USBD_TIMEOUT, 138
USBIO_ERR_VERSION_MISMATCH, 143
USBIO_ERR_VID_RESTRICTION, 143
USBIO_ERR_XACT_ERROR, 135
USBIO_FEATURE_REQUEST, 99
USBIO_FRAME_NUMBER, 116
USBIO_GET_CONFIGURATION_DATA, 102
USBIO_GET_INTERFACE_DATA, 104

- USBIO_GET_INTERFACE, [103](#)
- USBIO_INTERFACE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [111](#)
- USBIO_INTERFACE_SETTING, [105](#)
- USBIO_ISO_PACKET, [128](#)
- USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER_HEADER, [129](#)
- USBIO_ISO_TRANSFER, [126](#)
- USBIO_PIPE_CONFIGURATION_INFO, [113](#)
- USBIO_PIPE_CONTROL_TRANSFER, [125](#)
- USBIO_PIPE_PARAMETERS, [119](#)
- USBIO_PIPE_STATISTICS, [123](#)
- USBIO_PIPE_TYPE, [130](#)
- USBIO_QUERY_PIPE_STATISTICS, [121](#)
- USBIO_REQUEST_RECIPIENT, [131](#)
- USBIO_REQUEST_TYPE, [132](#)
- USBIO_SET_CONFIGURATION, [106](#)
- USBIO_SETUP_PIPE_STATISTICS, [120](#)
- USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST_DATA, [101](#)
- USBIO_STATUS_REQUEST, [100](#)

Value

- Member of USBIO_CLASS_OR_VENDOR_REQUEST, [107](#)

WaitForCompletion

- CUsbIoPipe::WaitForCompletion, [207](#)

WriteSync

- CUsbIoPipe::WriteSync, [211](#)

Write

- CUsbIoPipe::Write, [206](#)